

# Operating Manual

## VIP4G

VIP4G LTE Ethernet Bridge/Serial Gateway

Document: VIP4G Operating Manual.v1.4.pdf

FW Version: 1.1.6-r1172

April 2014



150 Country Hills Landing NW  
Calgary, Alberta  
Canada T3K 5P3

Phone: (403) 248-0028  
Fax: (403) 248-2762  
[www.microhardcorp.com](http://www.microhardcorp.com)

## Important User Information

---

### Warranty

Microhard Systems Inc. warrants that each product will be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of one (1) year for its products. The warranty commences on the date the product is shipped by Microhard Systems Inc. Microhard Systems Inc.'s sole liability and responsibility under this warranty is to repair or replace any product which is returned to it by the Buyer and which Microhard Systems Inc. determines does not conform to the warranty. Product returned to Microhard Systems Inc. for warranty service will be shipped to Microhard Systems Inc. at Buyer's expense and will be returned to Buyer at Microhard Systems Inc.'s expense. In no event shall Microhard Systems Inc. be responsible under this warranty for any defect which is caused by negligence, misuse or mistreatment of a product or for any unit which has been altered or modified in any way. The warranty of replacement shall terminate with the warranty of the product.

### Warranty Disclaims

Microhard Systems Inc. makes no warranties of any nature of kind, expressed or implied, with respect to the hardware, software, and/or products and hereby disclaims any and all such warranties, including but not limited to warranty of non-infringement, implied warranties of merchantability for a particular purpose, any interruption or loss of the hardware, software, and/or product, any delay in providing the hardware, software, and/or product or correcting any defect in the hardware, software, and/or product, or any other warranty. The Purchaser represents and warrants that Microhard Systems Inc. has not made any such warranties to the Purchaser or its agents MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. EXPRESS WARRANTY TO BUYER CONSTITUTES MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. SOLE LIABILITY AND THE BUYER'S SOLE REMEDIES. EXCEPT AS THUS PROVIDED, MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PROMISE.

**MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. PRODUCTS ARE NOT DESIGNED OR INTENDED TO BE USED IN ANY LIFE SUPPORT RELATED DEVICE OR SYSTEM RELATED FUNCTIONS NOR AS PART OF ANY OTHER CRITICAL SYSTEM AND ARE GRANTED NO FUNCTIONAL WARRANTY.**

### Indemnification

The Purchaser shall indemnify Microhard Systems Inc. and its respective directors, officers, employees, successors and assigns including any subsidiaries, related corporations, or affiliates, shall be released and discharged from any and all manner of action, causes of action, liability, losses, damages, suits, dues, sums of money, expenses (including legal fees), general damages, special damages, including without limitation, claims for personal injuries, death or property damage related to the products sold hereunder, costs and demands of every and any kind and nature whatsoever at law.

IN NO EVENT WILL MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, CATASTROPHIC, PUNITIVE OR OTHER DAMAGES WHICH MAY BE CLAIMED TO ARISE IN CONNECTION WITH THE HARDWARE, REGARDLESS OF THE LEGAL THEORY BEHIND SUCH CLAIMS, WHETHER IN TORT, CONTRACT OR UNDER ANY APPLICABLE STATUTORY OR REGULATORY LAWS, RULES, REGULATIONS, EXECUTIVE OR ADMINISTRATIVE ORDERS OR DECLARATIONS OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. HAS BEEN ADVISED OR OTHERWISE HAS KNOWLEDGE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES AND TAKES NO ACTION TO PREVENT OR MINIMIZE SUCH DAMAGES. IN THE EVENT THAT REGARDLESS OF THE WARRANTY DISCLAIMERS AND HOLD HARMLESS PROVISIONS INCLUDED ABOVE MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. IS SOMEHOW HELD LIABLE OR RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE OR INJURY, MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC.'S LIABILITY FOR ANY DAMAGES SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PROFIT REALIZED BY MICROHARD SYSTEMS INC. ON THE SALE OR PROVISION OF THE HARDWARE TO THE CUSTOMER.

### Proprietary Rights

The Buyer hereby acknowledges that Microhard Systems Inc. has a proprietary interest and intellectual property rights in the Hardware, Software and/or Products. The Purchaser shall not (i) remove any copyright, trade secret, trademark or other evidence of Microhard Systems Inc.'s ownership or proprietary interest or confidentiality other proprietary notices contained on, or in, the Hardware, Software or Products, (ii) reproduce or modify any Hardware, Software or Products or make any copies thereof, (iii) reverse assemble, reverse engineer or decompile any Software or copy thereof in whole or in part, (iv) sell, transfer or otherwise make available to others the Hardware, Software, or Products or documentation thereof or any copy thereof, except in accordance with this Agreement.

## Important User Information (continued)

---

### About This Manual

It is assumed that users of the products described herein have either system integration or design experience, as well as an understanding of the fundamentals of radio communications.

Throughout this manual you will encounter not only illustrations (that further elaborate on the accompanying text), but also several symbols which you should be attentive to:

**Caution or Warning**

Usually advises against some action which could result in undesired or detrimental consequences.

**Point to Remember**

Highlights a key feature, point, or step which is noteworthy. Keeping these in mind will simplify or enhance device usage.

**Tip**

An idea or suggestion to improve efficiency or enhance usefulness.

**Information**

Information regarding a particular technology or concept.

## Important User Information (continued)

---

### Regulatory Requirements



**WARNING**

To satisfy FCC RF exposure requirements for mobile transmitting devices, a separation distance of 23cm or greater for the VIP4G utilizing a 3dBi antenna, or 3.5m or greater for the VIP4G utilizing a 34dBi antenna, should be maintained between the antenna of this device and persons during device operation. To ensure compliance, operations at closer than this distance is not recommended. The antenna being used for this transmitter must not be co-located in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.



**WARNING**

This device can only be used with Antennas approved for this device. Please contact Microhard Systems Inc. if you need more information or would like to order an antenna.



**WARNING**

**MAXIMUM EIRP**

FCC Regulations allow up to 36dBm Effective Isotropic Radiated Power (EIRP). Therefore, the sum of the transmitted power (in dBm and not to exceed +30dBm)), the cabling loss, and omnidirectional antenna gain cannot exceed 36dBm.

## CSA Class 1 Division 2 Option

---

### **CSA Class 1 Division 2 is Available Only on Specifically Marked Units**

If marked this for Class 1 Division 2 – then this product is available for use in Class 1, Division 2, in the indicated Groups on the product.

In such a case the following must be met:

The transceiver is not acceptable as a stand-alone unit for use in hazardous locations. The transceiver must be mounted within a separate enclosure, which is suitable for the intended application. Mounting the units within an approved enclosure that is certified for hazardous locations, or is installed within guidelines in accordance with CSA rules and local electrical and fire code, will ensure a safe and compliant installation.

Do not connect or disconnect equipment unless power has been switched off or the area is known to be non-hazardous.

Installation, operation and maintenance of the transceiver should be in accordance with the transceiver's installation manual, and the National Electrical Code.

Tampering or replacement with non-factory components may adversely affect the safe use of the transceiver in hazardous locations, and may void the approval.

The wall adapters supplied with your transceivers are NOT Class 1 Division 2 approved, and therefore, power must be supplied to the units using the screw-type or locking type connectors supplied from Microhard Systems Inc. and a Class 1 Division 2 power source within your panel.

If you are unsure as to the specific wiring and installation guidelines for Class 1 Division 2 codes, contact CSA International.

## Revision History

| Revision | Description  | Initials | Date        |
|----------|--|----------|-------------|
| 1.0      | Initial Release  | PEH      | June 2012   |
| 1.1      | Updated Screen shots, Firewall settings, added VPN settings  | PEH      | August 2012 |
| 1.2      | Updated Network (LAN/WAN), Added SMS, SMS over Serial, GPS over serial, I/O Rules, Accelerometer, GPS, Updated Firewall, Added MultiWAN, Event Reporting, Modbus, NMS Settings, Updated Screen shots, Updated reference numbers for drawings and images, misc formatting. Added IP-Passthrough, Port Forwarding Examples. Based on firmware v1.1.6-r1114.                    | PEH      | Dec 2012    |
| 1.3      | Updated to reflect changes made in firmware version v.1.1.6-r1130. Updated Network (LAN/WAN), Added SMS Alerts, Wireless Virtual Interfaces, AP Isolation, Updated GPS Report, Added GPSGate, Recorder and Load Record, Updated Gateway-Gateway VPN, Added AT Commands (Serial & Telnet), Supported AT Commands. Misc formatting & various corrections. Updated screenshots. | PEH      | Mar 2013    |
| 1.31     | Added GPS Receiver specs   | PEH      | Mar 2013    |
| 1.32     | Corrected LTE Frequency Band Specs   | PEH      | Apr 2013    |
| 1.33     | Added PoE information  | PEH      | Apr 2013    |
| 1.34     | Added IP67 Enclosure Dimensional Info  | PEH      | Apr 2013    |
| 1.4      | Updated to reflect changes made up to firmware version v.1.1.6-r1172. Added Data Usage Alerts, GPS TAIP, WebSocket, Updated Firewall, Updated Network, Updated WAN, Updated MultiWan, Added Firewall Examples, Updated VPN etc.  | PEH      | Apr 2014    |
|          |  |          |             |

## Table of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1.0 Overview .....</b>               | <b>10</b> |
| 1.1 Performance Features .....          | 10        |
| 1.2 Specifications .....                | 11        |
| <b>2.0 QUICK START .....</b>            | <b>13</b> |
| 2.1 Installing the SIM Card .....       | 13        |
| 2.2 Getting Started with Cellular ..... | 13        |
| 2.3 Getting Started with WiFi .....     | 17        |
| 2.3.1 Setting up WiFi .....             | 17        |
| 2.3.1 Connecting to WiFi .....          | 18        |
| <b>3.0 Hardware Features .....</b>      | <b>20</b> |
| 3.1 VIP4G .....                         | 20        |
| 3.1.1 VIP4G Mechanical Drawings .....   | 21        |
| 3.1.2 VIP4G Connections .....           | 22        |
| 3.1.2.1 Front .....                     | 22        |
| 3.1.2.2 Rear .....                      | 23        |
| 3.1.3 VIP4G Indicators .....            | 25        |
| <b>4.0 Configuration.....</b>           | <b>26</b> |
| <b>4.0 Web User Interface.....</b>      | <b>26</b> |
| 4.0.1 Logon Window.....                 | 27        |
| <b>4.1 System.....</b>                  | <b>28</b> |
| 4.1.1 Summary.....                      | 28        |
| 4.1.2 Settings.....                     | 29        |
| Host Name .....                         | 29        |
| Date/Time .....                         | 30        |
| NTP Server Settings .....               | 31        |
| HTTP Port Settings.....                 | 31        |
| HTTPS Port Settings .....               | 31        |
| 4.1.3 Access Control .....              | 32        |
| Password Change .....                   | 32        |
| Users .....                             | 33        |
| 4.1.4 Services .....                    | 34        |
| RSSI LED's .....                        | 34        |
| SSH .....                               | 34        |
| Telnet.....                             | 34        |
| 4.1.5 Power Saving .....                | 36        |
| 4.1.6 Maintenance.....                  | 37        |
| Version Information.....                | 37        |
| Firmware Upgrade.....                   | 37        |
| Reset to Default.....                   | 38        |
| Backup & Restore Configurations.....    | 38        |
| 4.1.7 Reboot .....                      | 39        |
| 4.1.8 Logout.....                       | 39        |
| <b>4.2 Network .....</b>                | <b>40</b> |
| 4.2.1 Status .....                      | 40        |
| 4.2.2 LAN .....                         | 41        |
| 4.2.3 WAN .....                         | 46        |
| 4.2.4 Switch .....                      | 48        |
| 4.2.5 Routes .....                      | 50        |
| 4.2.6 GRE.....                          | 52        |
| 4.2.7 SNMP .....                        | 55        |
| 4.2.8 sdpServer.....                    | 58        |
| 4.2.9 Local Monitor.....                | 59        |



## Table of Contents

|                                    |           |
|------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>4.3 Carrier.....</b>            | <b>60</b> |
| 4.3.1 Status .....                 | 60        |
| 4.3.2 Settings.....                | 61        |
| IP-Passthrough.....                | 62        |
| APN (Access Point Name) .....      | 62        |
| 4.3.3 Keepalive .....              | 65        |
| 4.3.4 Traffic Watchdog .....       | 66        |
| 4.3.5 Dynamic DNS.....             | 67        |
| 4.3.6 SMS Config.....              | 68        |
| SMS Commands .....                 | 68        |
| SMS Alerts .....                   | 69        |
| 4.3.7 SMS.....                     | 71        |
| 4.3.8 Data Usage Alerts .....      | 72        |
| <b>4.4 Wireless.....</b>           | <b>75</b> |
| 4.4.1 Status .....                 | 75        |
| 4.4.2 Radio1 .....                 | 76        |
| Radio Phy Configuration .....      | 76        |
| 802.11 Mode .....                  | 76        |
| Channel Frequency .....            | 77        |
| Radio Virtual Interface .....      | 78        |
| Operating Mode.....                | 79        |
| TX Rate.....                       | 79        |
| TX Power .....                     | 80        |
| AP Isolation.....                  | 80        |
| SSID .....                         | 80        |
| Encryption Type .....              | 81        |
| <b>4.5 Comport.....</b>            | <b>82</b> |
| 4.5.1 Status .....                 | 82        |
| 4.5.2 Settings.....                | 83        |
| Data Baud Rate.....                | 84        |
| IP Protocol Config.....            | 87        |
| TCP Client.....                    | 87        |
| TCP Server .....                   | 87        |
| TCP Client/Server.....             | 88        |
| UDP Point-to-Point .....           | 88        |
| UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P) .....  | 88        |
| UDP Point-to-Multipoint (MP) ..... | 89        |
| UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint.....  | 89        |
| SMTP Client.....                   | 90        |
| SMS Transparent Mode.....          | 91        |
| GPS Transparent Mode.....          | 92        |
| <b>4.6 I/O .....</b>               | <b>93</b> |
| 4.6.1 Status .....                 | 93        |
| 4.6.2 Output.....                  | 94        |
| 4.6.3 I/O Rules.....               | 95        |
| 4.6.4 Accelerometer .....          | 96        |
| <b>4.7 GPS.....</b>                | <b>98</b> |
| 4.7.1 Location .....               | 98        |
| 4.7.2 Settings.....                | 99        |
| 4.7.3 GPS Report.....              | 100       |
| 4.7.4 GpsGate .....                | 102       |
| 4.7.5 Recorder .....               | 105       |
| 4.7.6 Load Record.....             | 107       |
| 4.7.7 TAIP.....                    | 109       |



## Table of Contents

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>4.8 Firewall .....</b>                   | <b>111</b> |
| 4.8.1 Status .....                          | 111        |
| 4.8.2 General .....                         | 112        |
| 4.8.3 Rules .....                           | 114        |
| 4.8.4 Port Forwarding.....                  | 116        |
| DMZ.....                                    | 116        |
| 4.8.5 MAC-IP List.....                      | 118        |
| MAC List Configuration .....                | 118        |
| IP List Configuration .....                 | 119        |
| 4.8.6 Reset Firewall to Defaults .....      | 120        |
| <b>4.9 VPN .....</b>                        | <b>121</b> |
| 4.9.1 Summary.....                          | 121        |
| 4.9.2 Gateway to Gateway .....              | 122        |
| 4.9.3 Client to Gateway (L2TP Client) ..... | 127        |
| 4.9.4 VPN Client Access .....               | 129        |
| 4.9.5 Certificate Management.....           | 130        |
| <b>4.10 MultiWAN.....</b>                   | <b>131</b> |
| 4.10.1 Status .....                         | 131        |
| 4.10.2 Settings.....                        | 132        |
| 4.10.3 Traffic.....                         | 134        |
| <b>4.11 Tools.....</b>                      | <b>136</b> |
| 4.11.1 Discovery .....                      | 136        |
| 4.11.2 Netflow Reports .....                | 137        |
| 4.11.3 NMS Settings.....                    | 139        |
| 4.11.4 Event Report .....                   | 143        |
| 4.11.4.1 Configuration .....                | 143        |
| 4.11.4.2 Message Structure .....            | 144        |
| 4.11.4.3 Message Payload.....               | 145        |
| 4.11.5 Modbus .....                         | 146        |
| 4.11.5.1 TCP Modbus .....                   | 146        |
| 4.11.5.2 COM (Serial) Modbus.....           | 148        |
| 4.11.5.3 Modbus Data Map .....              | 149        |
| 4.11.6 Websocket.....                       | 150        |
| 4.11.7 Site Survey .....                    | 152        |
| 4.11.8 Ping.....                            | 153        |
| 4.11.9 TraceRoute.....                      | 154        |
| <b>5.0 AT Command Line Interface.....</b>   | <b>155</b> |
| <b>5.1 AT Command Overview .....</b>        | <b>155</b> |
| 5.1.1 Serial Port .....                     | 155        |
| 5.1.2 Telnet (TCP/IP).....                  | 156        |
| <b>5.2 AT Command Syntax .....</b>          | <b>157</b> |
| <b>5.3 Supported AT Commands .....</b>      | <b>158</b> |
| <b>Appendices .....</b>                     | <b>181</b> |
| Appendix A: Serial Interface.....           | 181        |
| Appendix B: IP-Passthrough Example.....     | 182        |
| Appendix C: Port Forwarding Example.....    | 184        |
| Appendix D: Firewall Example .....          | 186        |
| Appendix E: VPN Example .....               | 188        |
| Appendix F: Troubleshooting (FAQ) .....     | 190        |

## 1.0 Overview

---

The VIP4G is a high-performance 4G LTE Cellular Ethernet & Serial Gateway with 802.11 a/b/g/n WiFi capability, 4 Gigabit Ethernet Ports, 4x Digital I/O, and a fully complimented RS232/485/422 serial port.

The VIP4G utilizes the cellular infrastructure to provide network access to wired and wireless devices anywhere cellular coverage is supported by a cellular carrier. The VIP4G supports up to 100Mbps when connected to a LTE enabled carrier, or global fallback to 3G/Edge networks for areas without 4G LTE.

Providing reliable wireless Ethernet bridge functionality as well gateway service for most equipment types which employ an RS232, RS422, or RS485 interface, the VIP4G can be used in a limitless number and types of applications such as:

- High-speed backbone
- IP video surveillance
- Voice over IP (VoIP)
- Ethernet wireless extension
- WiFi Hotspot
- Legacy network/device migration
- SCADA (PLC's, Modbus, Hart)
- Facilitating internetwork wireless communications

### 1.1 Performance Features

Key performance features of the VIP4G include:

- Fast 4G LTE Link to Wireless Carrier
- Up to 100Mbps Downlink / 50 Mbps Uplink
- Fast Data Rates to 802.11a/b/g/n WiFi Devices
- Digital I/O - 4 Inputs, 4 Outputs
- DMZ and Port Forwarding
- 4 - 10/100/1000 Ethernet Ports (WAN/LAN)
- Integrated GPS (TCP Server/UDP Reporting)
- User interface via local console, telnet, web browser
- communicates with virtually all PLCs, RTUs, and serial devices through either RS232, RS422, or RS485 interface
- Local & remote wireless firmware upgradable
- User configurable Firewall with IP/MAC ACL
- IP/Sec secure VPN and GRE Tunneling

## 1.0 Overview

---

### 1.2 Specifications

For detailed specifications, please see the specification sheets available on the Microhard website @ <http://www.microhardcorp.com> for your specific model.

#### Electrical/General

##### Cellular:

**Supported Bands:** 4G LTE B4/B17 (1700/2100/700 MHz)  
Global Fallback to:  
HSPA+/UMTS 850/AWS/1900/2100 MHz  
GPRS 850/900/1800/1900 MHz

**Data Features:** 4G LTE  
Up to 100 Mbps downlink  
Up to 50 Mbps uplink

**SIM Card:** 1.8 / 3.0 V

##### WiFi: (Order Options)

**Frequency:** 2.4 GHz / 5.8 GHz

**Spread Method:** OFDM/QPSK/16QAM/64QAM

**Data Rates:** 802.11 b/g (up to 30dBm) or 802.11 a/b/g/n (up to 20 dBm)

**TX Power:** Adjustable (See above)

**Data Encryption:** WEP, WPA(PSK), WPA2(PSK), WPA+WPA2 (PSK)  
(Subject to Export Restrictions)

##### General:

**Input Voltage:** 9 - 30 VDC

**Power over Ethernet:** 802.3af Passive PoE on Ethernet Port

**Serial Baud Rate:** 300bps to 921kbps

**Ethernet:** 10/100/1000 BaseT, Auto - MDI/X, IEEE 802.3

**Network Protocols:** TCP, UDP, TCP/IP, TFTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, HTTP, HTTPS\*, SSH\*, SNMP, FTP, DNS, Serial over IP

**Operating Modes:** Access Point, Client/Station, Repeater, Mesh Point

**Management:** Local Serial Console, Telnet, WebUI, SNMP, FTP & Wireless Upgrade

**Diagnostics:** Status LED's, RSSI, Ec/No, Temperature, Remote Diagnostics, Watchdog, UDP Reporting

**Digital I/O:** 4 Inputs / 4 Outputs

## 1.0 Overview

---

### 1.2 Specifications (Continued)

#### GPS:

**Navigation Update Rate:** Up to 5 Hz

**Accuracy:** Position: 2.5 m CEP  
SBAS: 2.0 m CEP

**Acquisition:** Cold Starts: 27 seconds  
Aided Starts: 4 seconds  
Hot Starts: 1 second

**Sensitivity:** Tracking: -159 dBm  
Cold Starts: -147 dBm  
Hot Starts: -156 dBm

#### Environmental

**Operation Temperature:** -40°F(-40°C) to 185°F(85°C)

**Humidity:** 5% to 95% non-condensing

#### Mechanical

##### Dimensions:

5.65" (145mm) X 3.72" (95mm) X 1.20" (30mm)

##### Weight:

Approx. 405 grams

##### Connectors:

**Antenna:** Wi-Fi: 2x RP-SMA Female  
Cellular: 2x SMA Female (Main, DIV)  
GPS: 1x SMA Female (Supports Active & Passive Antennas with LNA)

**Data:** RS232 Data: DE-9 Female  
RS485: SMT: 6-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 3-794618-6  
Mating Connector: 6-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 794617-6  
Ethernet: 4x RJ-45

**PWR, Misc:** Power: SMT: 4-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 3-794618-4  
Mating Connector: 4-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 794617-4

**Misc:** Digital I/O: SMT: 10-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 4-794618-0  
Mating Connector: 10-Pin Micro MATE-N-LOK AMP 1-794617-0

##### IP67 Enclosure (Optional):

**Dimensions:** Approx: 8.4"(213mm) X 7.2"(182mm) X 1.75" (44mm)

**Weight:** Approx: 1.25 kg

## 2.0 Quick Start

This QUICK START guide will walk you through the setup and process required to access the WebUI configuration window and to establish a basic wireless connection to your carrier.

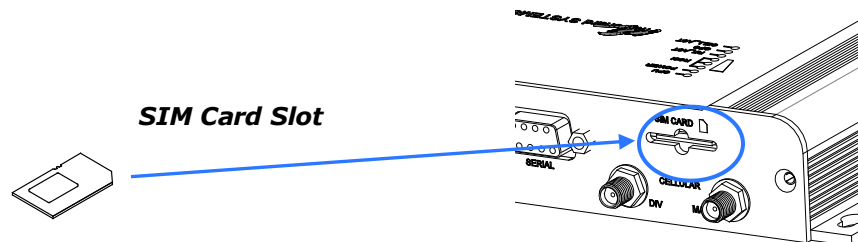
Note that the units arrive from the factory with the Local Network setting configured as 'Static' (IP Address 192.168.168.1, Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0, and Gateway 192.168.168.1), in DHCP server mode. (This is for the LAN Ethernet Adapter on the back of the VIP4G unit.)

### 2.1 Installing the SIM Card

- ✓ Before the VIP4G can be used on a cellular network a valid **SIM Card** for your Wireless Carrier must be installed. Insert the SIM Card into the slot as shown below.

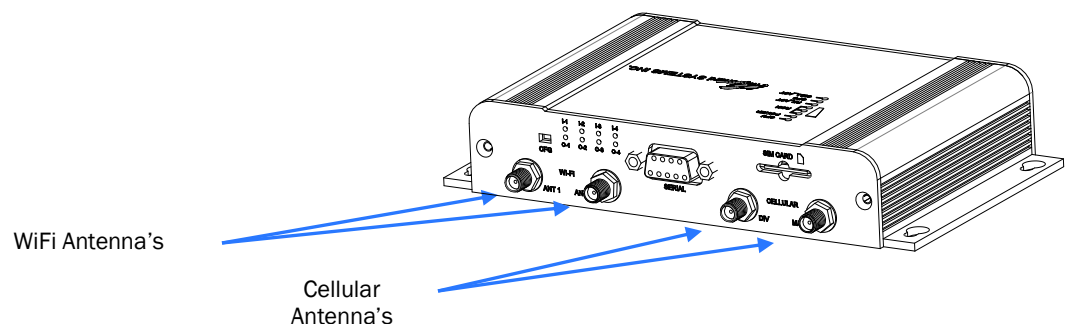


To reset to factory defaults, press and hold the CFG button for 8 seconds with the VIP4G powered up. The LED's will flash quickly and the IP4G will reboot with factory defaults.



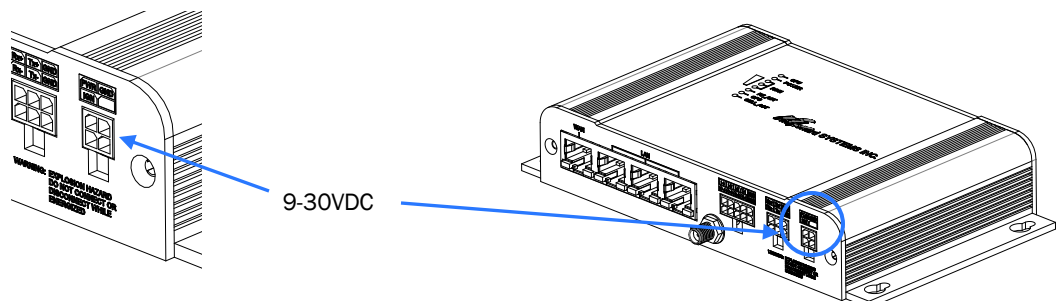
### 2.2 Getting Started with Cellular

- ✓ Connect the Antenna's to the applicable **ANTENNA** jack's of the VIP4G.



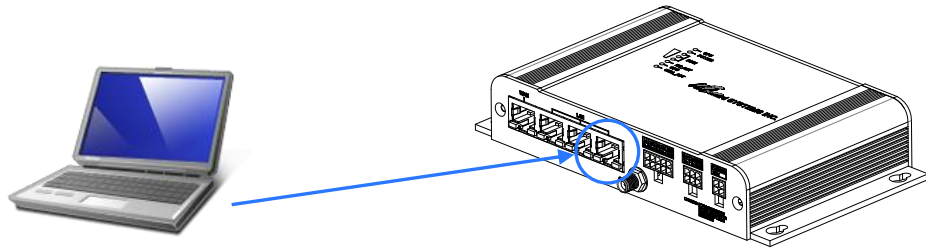
Use the MHS-supplied power adapter or an equivalent power source.

- ✓ Connect the power connector to the power adapter and apply power to the unit, once the blue CPU LED is on solid, proceed to the next step.



## 2.0 Quick Start

- ✓ Connect A PC configured for DHCP directly to one of the LAN **ETHERNET** ports of the VIP4G, using an Ethernet Cable. If the PC is configured for DHCP it will acquire a IP Address from the VIP4G.



- ✓ Open a Browser Window and enter the IP address 192.168.168.1 into the address bar.



The factory default network settings:

IP: 192.168.168.1  
Subnet: 255.255.255.0  
Gateway: 192.168.168.1



192.168.168.1

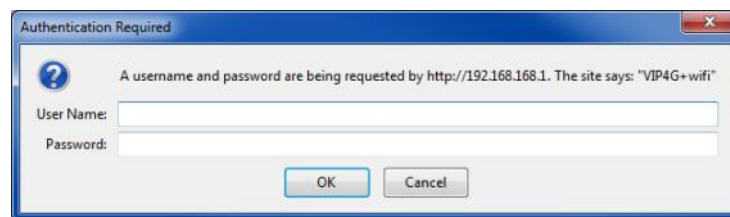
- ✓ The VIP4G will then ask for a Username and Password. Enter the factory defaults listed below.



The factory default login:

User name: **admin**  
Subnet: **admin**

It is always a good idea to change the default admin login for future security.



The Factory default login:

User name: **admin**  
Password: **admin**



## 2.0 Quick Start

- ✓ Once successfully logged in, the System Summary page will be displayed.

| System                    | Network           | Carrier        | Wireless | Comport     | I/O                   | Firewall             | Multicast | Qos | Tools |
|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----|-------|
| <b>Summary</b>            | Settings          | Access Control | Services | Maintenance | Reboot                | Logout               |           |     |       |
| <b>System Information</b> |                   |                |          |             |                       |                      |           |     |       |
| <b>System Information</b> |                   |                |          |             | <b>Carrier Status</b> |                      |           |     |       |
| <b>System:</b>            |                   |                |          |             | <b>Module Status</b>  | Enabled              |           |     |       |
| Host Name                 | VIP4G+wifi        |                |          |             | Current APN           | Unknown              |           |     |       |
| System date               | 1970-01-01        |                |          |             | Activity Status       | Disconnected         |           |     |       |
| System time               | 00:00:49          |                |          |             | Network               | Bell                 |           |     |       |
| System uptime             | 0 min             |                |          |             | Home/Roaming          | Home                 |           |     |       |
| <b>Version:</b>           |                   |                |          |             | Current Technology    | HSUPA                |           |     |       |
| Product Name              | VIP4G+wifi        |                |          |             | Core Temperature(°C)  | 28                   |           |     |       |
| Firmware Version          | VIP 2.0           |                |          |             | IMEI                  | 012773002004297      |           |     |       |
| Hardware Type             | v2.0.0            |                |          |             | SIM Number (ICCID)    | 89302610202061722946 |           |     |       |
| Build Version             | v1.1.2 build 1076 |                |          |             | Phone Number          | 14034635915          |           |     |       |
| Built date                | 2012-05-10        |                |          |             | RSSI (dBm)            | -54 dBm              |           |     |       |
| Built time                | 16:10:44          |                |          |             | Connection Duration   | 0                    |           |     |       |



**Auto APN:** Introduced in firmware version v1.1.6-r1142, the VIP4G will attempt to detect the carrier based on the SIM card installed and cycle through a list of commonly used APN's to provide quick network connectivity.

- ✓ As seen above under Carrier Status, the SIM card is installed, but an APN has not been specified. Setting the APN to auto (default) may provide quick network connectivity, but may not work with some carriers, or with private APN's. To set or change the APN, click on the Carrier > Settings tab and enter the APN supplied by your carrier in the APN field. Some carriers may also require a Username and Password.


| System                       | Network         | Carrier   | Wireless         | Comport     | I/O        | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|-------------|------------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status                       | <b>Settings</b> | Keepalive | Traffic Watchdog | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS |          |     |          |       |
| <b>Carrier Configuration</b> |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| <b>Configuration</b>         |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Carrier status               | Enable          |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| IP-Passthrough               | Disable         |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| DNS-Passthrough              | Disable         |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| APN                          | staticip.apn    |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| SIM Pin                      |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Technologies Type            | ALL             |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Technologies Mode            | AUTO            |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Data Call Parameters         |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Primary DNS Address          |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Secondary DNS Address        |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Primary NetBIOS Name Server  |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Secondary NetBIOS Server     |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| IP Address                   |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Authentication               | Device decide   |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| User Name                    |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |
| Password                     |                 |           |                  |             |            |     |          |     |          |       |

- ✓ Once the APN and any other required information is entered to connect to your carrier, click on "Submit". Return to the System > Summary tab.



## 2.0 Quick Start

- ✓ On the Carrier > Status Tab, verify that a WAN IP Address has been assigned by your carrier. It may take a few minutes, so try refreshing the page if the WAN IP Address doesn't show up right away. The Activity Status should also show "Connected".

| System   | Network                   | Carrier   | Wireless             | Comport   | I/O                           | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--|---------------------------|-----------|----------------------|---|-------------------------------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status   | Settings                  | Keepalive | Traffic Watchdog     | Dynamic DNS   | SMS Config                    | SMS |          |     |          |       |
| Carrier Status                                       |                           |           |                      |   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Carrier Status                                       |                           |           |                      |   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Current APN  | staticip.apn              |           | Core Temperature(°C) | 73  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Activity Status                                      | Connected                 |           | IMEI                 | 012773002003661   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Network  | ROGERS                    |           | SIM PIN              | READY   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Home/Roaming   | Home                      |           | SIM Number (ICCID)   | 89302720401025355549  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Service Mode   | Automatic                 |           | Phone Number         | +15878938641  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Service State  | WCDMA CS and PS           |           | RSSI (dBm)           | -64  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Cell ID  | 2745009                   |           | RSRP (dBm)           | N/A   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| LAC  | 63333                     |           | RSRQ (dBm)           | N/A   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Current Technology                                   | HSPA+                     |           | Connection Duration  | 22 sec  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Available Technology                                 | UMTS, HSDPA, HSUPA, HSPA+ |           | WAN IP Address       | 74.198.186.193  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
|  |                           |           | DNS Server 1         | 208.67.222.222  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
|  |                           |           | DNS Server 2         | 208.67.220.220  |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Recieved Packet Statistics                           |                           |           |                      |   | Transmitted Packet Statistics |     |          |     |          |       |
| Recieve bytes  | 14.228MB                  |           | Transmit bytes       | 9.451MB   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Recieve packets                                      | 30782                     |           | Transmit packets     | 90513   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Recieve errors                                       | 0                         |           | Transmit errors      | 0   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| Drop packets   | 0                         |           | Drop packets         | 0   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |
| <div>Stop Refreshing</div> Interval: 20 (in seconds) |                           |           |                      |   |                               |     |          |     |          |       |

- ✓ If you have set a static IP on your PC, you may need to add the DNS Servers shown in the Carrier Status Menu to your PC to enable internet access.
- ✓ Congratulations! Your VIP4G is successfully connected to your Cellular Carrier. The next section gives a overview on enabling and setting up the WiFi Wireless features of the modem giving 802.11 devices network access.
- ✓ To access devices connected to VIP4G remotely, one or more of the following must be configured: IP-Passthrough, Port Forwarding, DMZ. Another option would be to set up a VPN.
- ✓ Ensure that all default passwords are changed to limit access to the modem.
- ✓ For best practices and to limit data charges it is critical to properly set up the firewall. (Especially important for Public Static IP addresses.)



Ensure the default passwords are changed.



Set up appropriate firewall rules to block unwanted incoming data.

## 2.0 Quick Start

### 2.3 Getting Started with WiFi

This **Quick Start** section walks users through setting up a basic WiFi AP (Access Point). For additional settings and configuration considerations, refer to the appropriate sections in the manual. This walkthrough assumes all settings are in the factory default state.



#### 2.3.1 Setting up WiFi

- ✓ Use **Section 2.2** *Getting Started with Cellular* to connect, power up and log in and configure the Carrier in a VIP4G.
- ✓ Click on the Wireless > Radio1 Tab to setup the WiFi portion of the VIP4G.

The screenshot shows the 'Radio1' tab in the 'Wireless' section. The 'Radio1 Phy Configuration' section includes settings for Radio (On), Mode (802.11NG - High Throughput on 2.4GHz), High Throughput Mode (HT20), Advanced Capabilities (Show), Channel-Frequency (11 - 2.462 GHz), Wireless Distance (10000 m), RTS Thr (256~2346) (OFF), and Fragment Thr (256~2346) (OFF). The 'Radio1 Virtual Interface' section includes settings for Network (LAN), Mode (Access Point), TX bitrate (Auto), Tx Power (17 dbm), WDS (On), ESSID Broadcast (On), SSID (MyNetwork), Encryption Type (WPA2 (PSK)), WPA PSK (MyPassword), and Show password (checked).

In **Radio1 Phy Configuration**, ensure the mode is set for 802.11NG.

In the **Radio1 Virtual Interface**, ensure that the Mode is set for Access Point.

Enter a name for the Wireless Network under **SSID**. This example uses MyNetwork

(Optional) Set a password for the WiFi, this example uses MyPassword

Click **Submit**.

## 2.0 Quick Start

### 2.3.2 Connecting to WiFi

- ✓ Now that the VIP4G has connection to the Cellular Carrier (See Section 2.2) and the WiFi has been set up (See Section 2.3), WiFi devices should be able to detect and connect to the VIP4G.
- ✓ On a WiFi enabled PC/Device, the SSID of MyNetwork, that was created in the last example should be visible. Connect to that SSID and enter the password.



- ✓ Once connected the status should change to connected, and network access should be enabled.



## 2.0 Quick Start

- ✓ The status of the WiFi connection should also be visible in the Wireless > Status tab in the WebUI as seen below.

System

Network

Carrier

Wireless

Comport

I/O

GPS

Firewall

VPN

MultiWAN

Tools

Status

Radio1

Wireless Interfaces

Radio 1 Status

General Status

MAC Address

Mode

SSID

Frequency Band

Radio Frequency

Security mode

00:80:48:79:8E:46

Access Point

MHSMKT

Dual-Band Mode

2.462

WPA+WPA2(PSK)

Traffic Status

Receive bytes

Receive packets

Transmit bytes

Transmit packets

877.7KB

7972

6.55651MB

46638

Connection Status

MAC Address

Noise Floor (dBm)

SNR (dB)

RSSI (dBm)

TX CCQ (%)

RX CCQ (%)

TX Rate

RX Rate

Signal Level

98:03:d8:c5:52:18

-88

70

-25

93

99

58.5 MBit/s

65.0 MBit/s

100%

Stop Refreshing

Interval: 20

## 3.0 Hardware Features

### 3.1 VIP4G

The VIP4G is a fully-enclosed unit ready to be interfaced to external devices.



Image 3-1: Front View of VIP4G



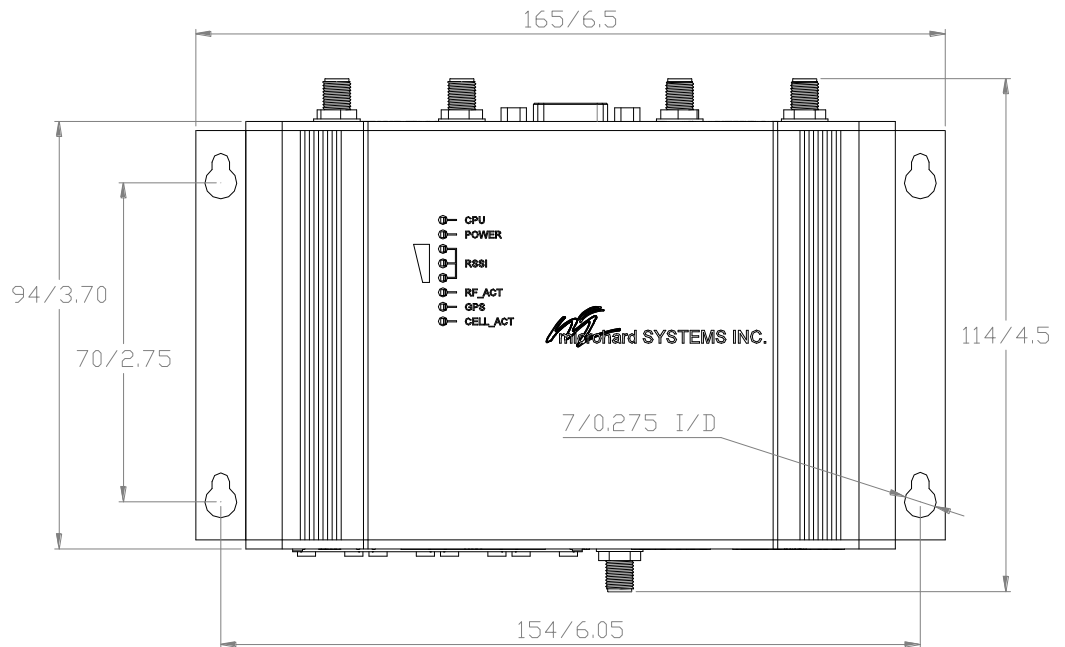
Image 3-2: Rear View of VIP4G

VIP4G Hardware Features Include:

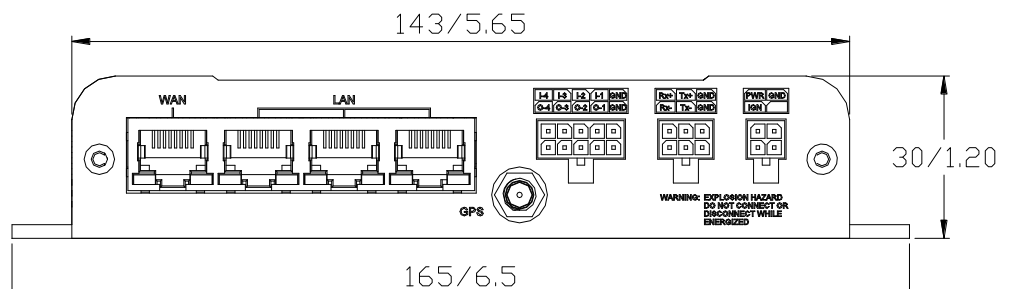
- Standard Connectors for:
  - 1 WAN Ethernet Ports (RJ45)
  - 3 LAN Ethernet Ports (RJ45)
  - Data Port (RS232/DB9)
  - 4-Pin: MATE-N-LOK Type Connector for Power
  - 6-Pin: MATE-N-LOK Type Connector for RS485 Data
  - 10-Pin: MATE-N-LOK Type Connector for Digital I/O
  - Cellular Antenna (SMA Female Antenna Connection x2)
  - WiFi Antenna (RP-SMA Female Antenna Connection x2)
  - Built in GPS (SMA Female Antenna Connection)
- Status/Diagnostic LED's for CPU, POWER, RSSI, RF\_ACT, GPS, CELL\_ACT
- CFG Button for resetting to factory settings and firmware recovery operations
- Mounting Holes/Tabs

## 3.0 Hardware Features

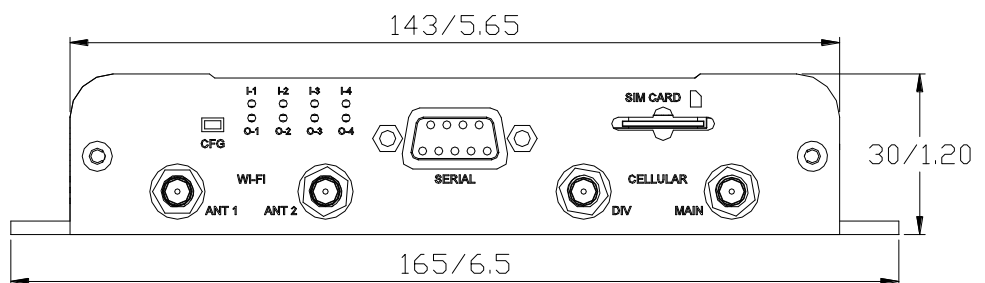
### 3.1.1 Mechanical Drawings



Drawing 3-1: VIP Top View Dimensions



Drawing 3-2: VIP Front View Dimensions



Drawing 3-3: VIP Rear View Dimensions

**Note: All dimension units: Millimeter & Inches (mm/inches)**

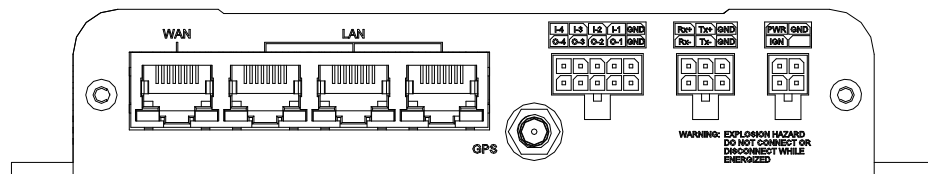


## 3.0 Hardware Features

### 3.1.2 Connections

#### 3.1.2.1 Front

On the front of the VIP4G Series are, from left to right:



Drawing 3-4: VIP4G Front View

- WAN port
  - 10/100/1000 Ethernet RJ45 Connection.
  - 802.3af Passive PoE (WAN port only)

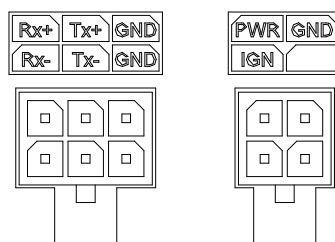


**Caution:** Using a power supply that does not provide proper voltage may damage the VIP4G unit.

| Ethernet RJ45 Connector Pin Number |      |      |      |     |     |      |     |     |
|------------------------------------|------|------|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|
| Source Voltage                     | 1    | 2    | 3    | 4   | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   |
| 9 - 30 Vdc                         | Data | Data | Data | DC+ | DC+ | Data | DC- | DC- |

Table 3-1: WAN PoE Connections

- LAN port
  - 3x - 10/100/1000 Ethernet RJ45 Connection.
- GPS
  - SMA Female
- Digital I/O Connector 10-Pin: (Use AMP MATE-N-LOK PN# 1-794617-0)
  - I-4, I-3, I-2, I-1, GND
  - O-4, O-3, O-2, O-1, GND
- RS485/422 Connector 6-Pin: (Use AMP MATE-N-LOK PN# 794617-6)
  - Rx+, Tx+, GND
  - Rx-, Tx-, GND
- Power Connector 4-Pin: (Use AMP MATE-N-LOK PN# 794617-4)
  - PWR, GND
  - IGN - Ignition signal for *Power Saving Mode*\*



| Name     | Input or Output |
|----------|-----------------|
| TxB (D+) | O               |
| TxA (D-) | O               |
| RxB (R+) | I               |
| RxA (R-) | I               |
| GND -    |                 |
| PWR +    | I               |

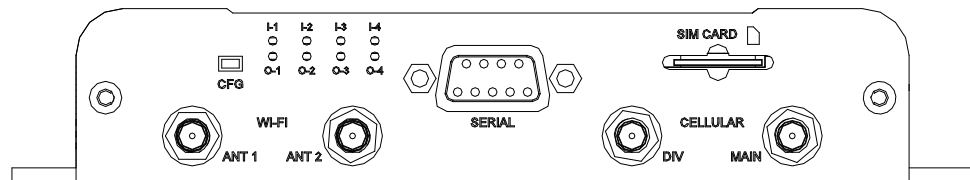
\* *Power Saving Mode* only available on select units, must be specified at time of order or returned to factory for upgrade.

Table 3-2: Data RS422/485 Vin Pin Assignment



## 3.0 Hardware Features

### 3.1.2.2 Rear



Drawing 3-5: VIP4G Rear View

#### CFG Button

Holding this button for 8 seconds while the VIP4G is powered up and running, will cause the unit to reset and load factory default settings:

**IP: 192.168.168.1 Subnet: 255.255.255.0**

With these settings a web browser can be used to configure the unit.

Holding this button depressed while powering-up the VIP4G will boot the unit into FLASH FILE SYSTEM RECOVERY mode. The default IP address for *system recovery (only - not for normal access to the unit)* is static: 192.168.1.39.

#### ANTENNA Connectors

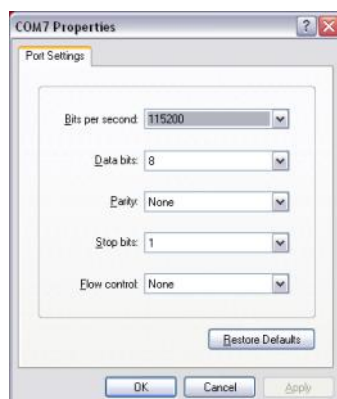
The VIP4G uses female SMA antenna connectors for the Cellular and female RP-SMA connectors for the Wi-Fi antennas. Two antenna connections are provided for Wi-Fi, ANT1, and ANT2. Two connectors are also provided for Cellular, MAIN and DIV.

#### Digital I/O LED's

The I-1, I-2, I-3, and I-4 LED's indicate the status of the input pins on the digital I/O interface. The O-1, O-2, O-3 and O-4 LED's indicate the current state of the corresponding output relays.

#### Serial Port

The Serial port can be used for console type configuration (If disabled), or as a data communications port for RS232 Devices.



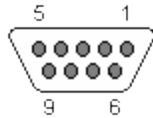
Default Console Port Settings:

Bits per Second: 115,200  
Data Bits: 8  
Parity: None  
Stop bits: 1  
Flow control: None



## 3.0 Hardware Features

### Serial Port (Continued)



See **Appendix A** for a full description of the COM1 RS-232 interface functions.

| Pin Name | No. | Description         | In/Out |
|----------|-----|---------------------|--------|
| DCD      | 1   | Data Carrier Detect | O      |
| RXD      | 2   | Receive Data        | O      |
| TXD      | 3   | Transmit Data       | I      |
| DTR      | 4   | Data Terminal Ready | I      |
| SG       | 5   | Signal Ground       |        |
| DSR      | 6   | Data Set Ready      | O      |
| RTS      | 7   | Request To Send     | I      |
| CTS      | 8   | Clear To Send       | O      |

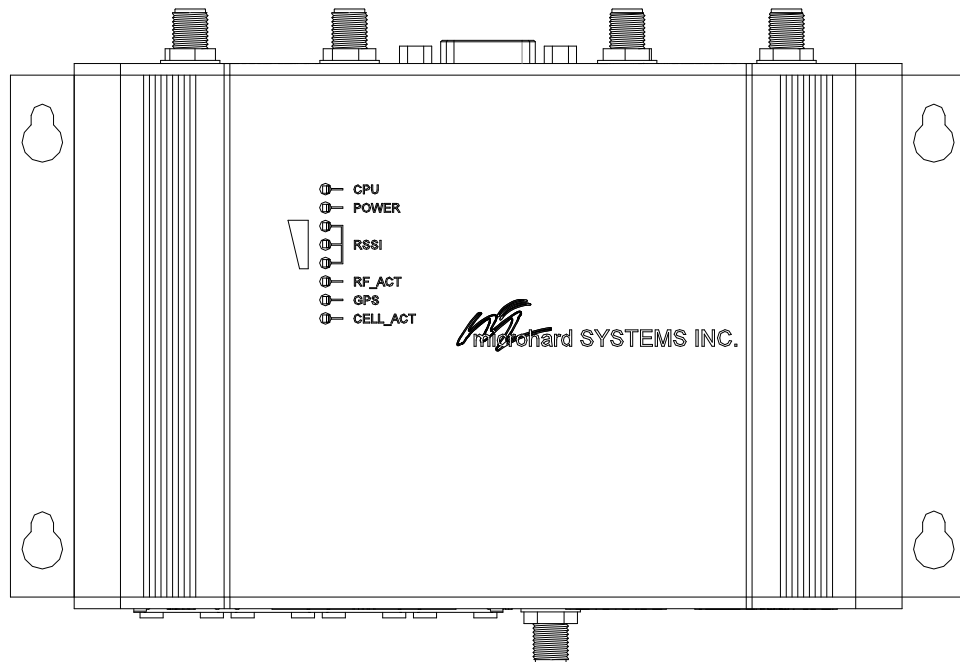
Table 3-3: COM2 DB9 Pin Assignment

### SIM Card

This slot is used to install a SIM card provided by the cellular carrier to enable communication to their cellular network. Ensure the SIM card is installed properly by paying attention to the diagram printed above the SIM card slot.

## 3.0 Hardware Features

### 3.1.3 Indicators



*Drawing 3-6: VIP4G Indicators*

**CPU (Blue)**

ON indicates the CPU is running.

**POWER (Red)**

Illuminates when power is correctly applied to the unit.

**RSSI (3 LEDs)**

Indicate the received signal strength of the signal to the Cellular carrier. The number of LED's illuminated indicate the strength of the signal, with all 3 being illuminated representing a strong signal.

**RF-ACT**

The RF Activity LED illuminates when there is activity on the WiFi wireless interface.

**GPS**

Indicates that the GPS module is powered on and ready.

**CELL\_ACT**

The CELL Activity LED illuminates when there is cellular activity.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.0 Web User Interface

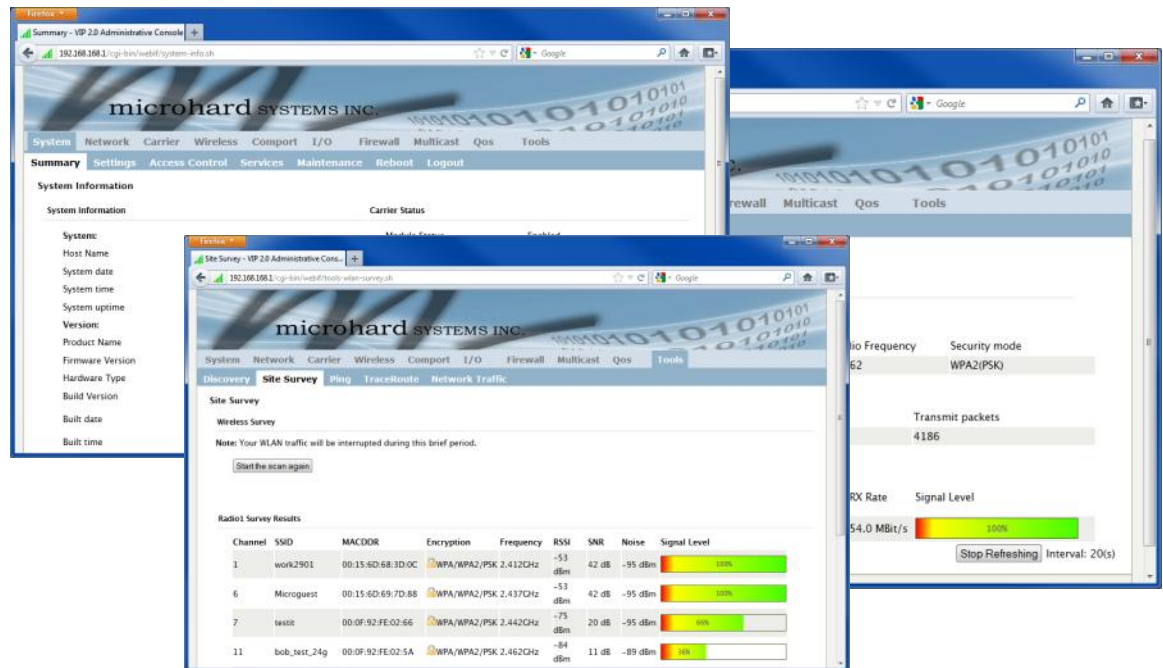


Image 4-0-1: WebUI

Initial configuration of an VIP4G using the Web User (Browser) Interface (Web UI) method involves the following steps:

- configure a static IP Address on your PC to 192.168.168.10 (or any address on the 192.168.168.X subnet other than the default IP of 192.168.168.1)
- connect a VIP4G LAN ETHERNET port to PC NIC card using an Ethernet cable
- apply power to the VIP4G and wait approximately 60 seconds for the system to load
- open a web browser and enter the factory default IP address of the unit: 192.168.168.1
- logon window appears; log on using default Username: **admin** Password: **admin**
- use the web browser based user interface to configure the VIP4G as required.
- refer to **Section 2.0: Quick Start** for step by step instructions.

In this section, all aspects of the Web Browser Interface, presented menus, and available configuration options will be discussed.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.0.1 Logon Window

Upon successfully accessing the VIP4G using a Web Browser, the Logon window will appear.

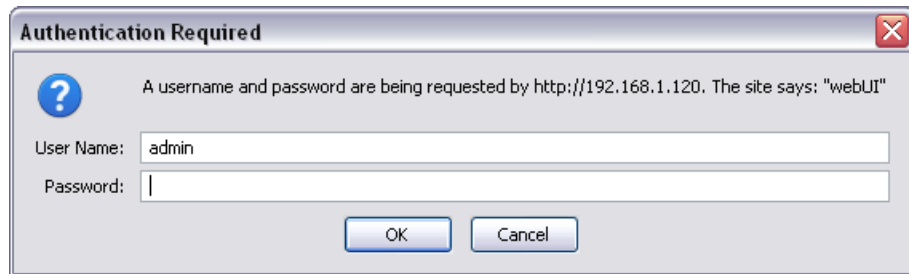


Image 4-0-2: Logon Window



For security, do not allow the web browser to remember the User Name or Password.

The factory default User Name is: **admin**

The default password is: **admin**

Note that the password is case sensitive. It may be changed (discussed further along in this section), but once changed, if forgotten, may not be recovered.

When entered, the password appears as 'dots' as shown in the image below. This display format prohibits others from viewing the password.

The 'Remember my password' checkbox may be selected for purposes of convenience, however it is recommended to ensure it is deselected - particularly once the unit is deployed in the field - for one primary reason: security.



It is advisable to change the login Password. Do not FORGET the new password as it cannot be recovered.

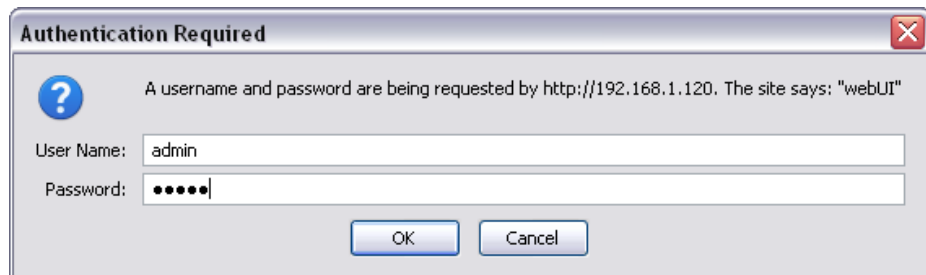


Image 4-0-3: Logon Window : Password Entry

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1 System

The main category tabs located at the top of the navigation bar separate the configuration of the VIP4G into different groups based on function. The System Tab contains the following sub menu's:

- Summary - Status summary of entire radio including network settings, version information, and radio connection status.
- Settings - Host Name, Default System Mode (Bridge or Router), System Time/Date, HTTP Port for the WebUI,
- Access Control - Change passwords, create new users
- Services - Enable/Disable RSSI LED's, SSH and Telnet services
- Maintenance - Version information, firmware Upgrades, reset to defaults, configuration backup and restore.
- Reboot - Remotely reboot the system.
- Logout - Logout of the current browser session.

#### 4.1.1 System > Summary

The System Summary screen is displayed immediately after initial login, showing a summary and status of all the functions of the VIP4G in a single display. This information includes System Status, Carrier Status, LAN & WAN network information, version info and WiFi radio status as seen below.

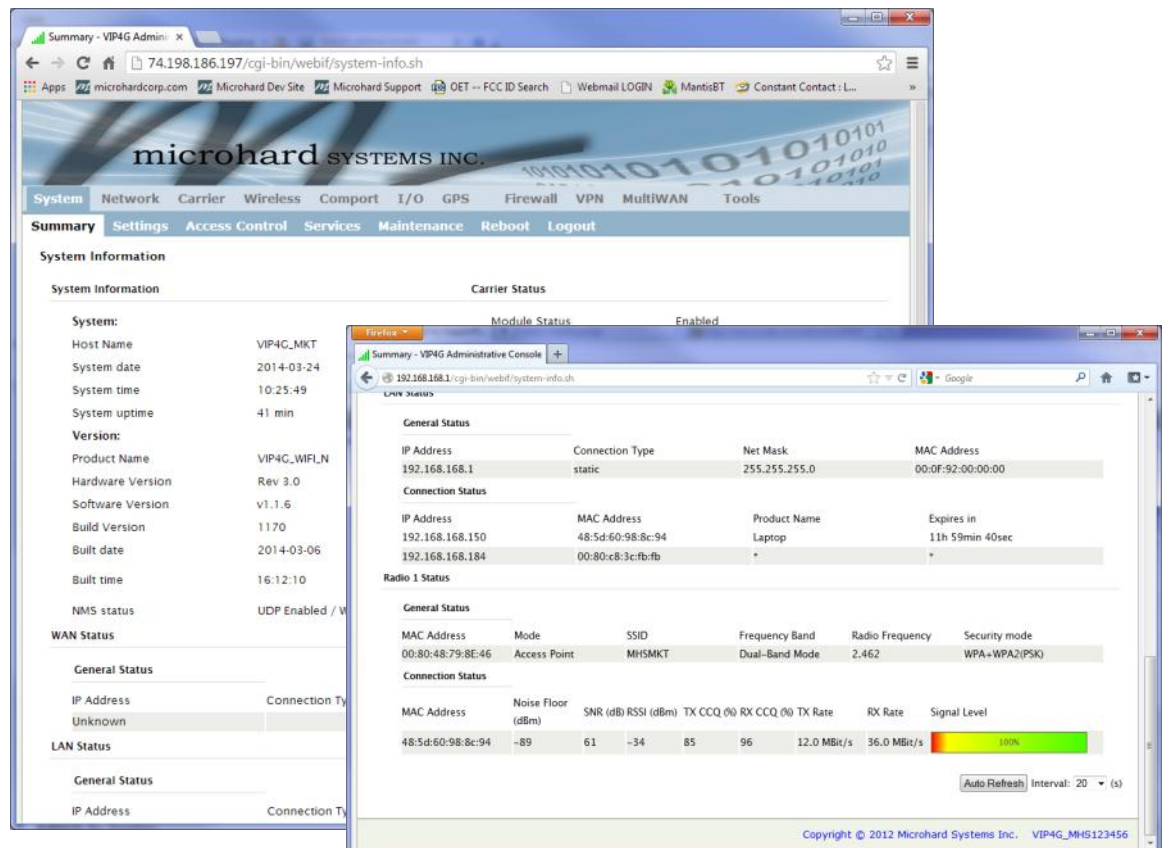


Image 4-1-1: System Info Window



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.2 System > Settings

#### System Settings

Options available in the System Settings menu allow for the configuration of the Host Name.

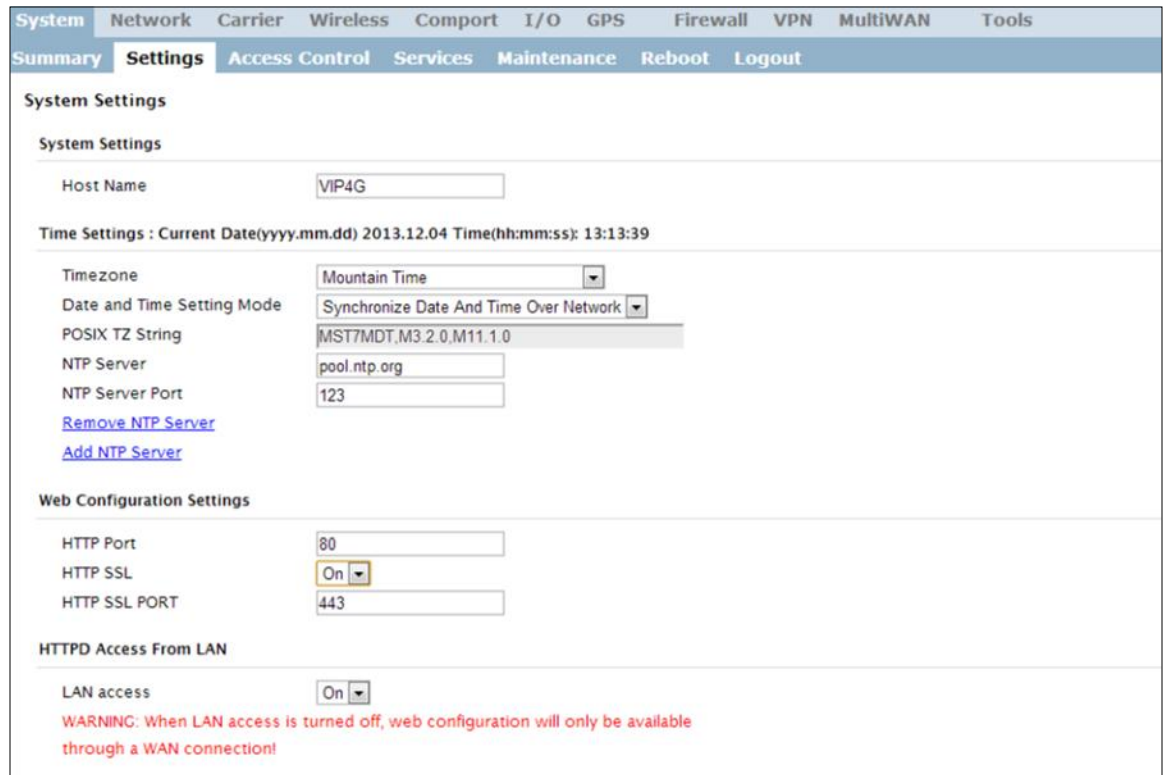


Image 4-1-2: System Settings > System Settings



The Host Name must not be confused with the **Network Name (SSID)** (Wireless Configuration menu). The Network Name MUST be exactly the same on each wireless device within a VIP4G network.

The Host Name is a convenient identifier for a specific VIP4G unit. This feature is most used when accessing units remotely: a convenient cross-reference for the unit's WAN IP address. This name appears when logged into a telnet session, or when the unit is reporting into Microhard NMS System.

#### Time Settings

The VIP4G can be set to use a local time source, thus keeping time on its own, or it can be configured to synchronize the date and time via a NTP Server. The options and menus available will change depending on the current setting of the Date and Time Setting Mode, as seen below.

#### Host Name

##### Values (characters)

**VIP4G (varies)**

up to 30 characters



## 4.0 Configuration



Network Time Protocol (NTP) can be used to synchronize the time and date or computer systems with a centralized, referenced server. This can help ensure all systems on a network have the same time and date.

**Time Settings : Current Date(yyyy.mm.dd) 2011.04.01 Time(hh:mm:ss): 21:38:13**

Date and Time  
Setting Mode

Date (yyyy.mm.dd)

Time (hh:mm:ss)

**Time Settings : Current Date(yyyy.mm.dd) 2011.04.01 Time(hh:mm:ss): 05:16:37**

Date and Time Setting  
Mode

Timezone

POSIX TZ String

NTP Server

NTP Server Port

[Remove NTP Server](#)

[Add NTP Server](#)

Image 4-1-3: System Settings > Time Settings

### Date and Time Setting Mode

Select the Date and Time Setting Mode required. If set for 'Use Local Time' the unit will keep its own time and not attempt to synchronize with a network server. If 'Synchronize Date And Time Over Network' is selected, a NTP server can be defined.

#### Values (selection)

**Use Local Time Source**  
Synchronize Date And Time Over Network

### Date

The calendar date may be entered in this field. Note that the entered value is lost should the VIP4G lose power for some reason.

#### Values (yyyy-mm-dd)

**2011.04.01** (varies)

### Time

The time may be entered in this field. Note that the entered value is lost should the VIP4G lose power for some reason.

#### Values (hh:mm:ss)

**11:27:28** (varies)

### Timezone

If connecting to a NTP time server, specify the timezone from the dropdown list.

#### Values (selection)

**User Defined** (or out of date)

### POSIX TZ String

This displays the POSIX TZ String used by the unit as determined by the timezone setting.

#### Values (read only)

(varies)

## 4.0 Configuration

### NTP Server

Enter the IP Address or domain name of the desired NTP time server.

Values (address)

pool.ntp.org

### NTP Port

Enter the IP Address or domain name of the desired NTP time server.

Values (port#)

123

### Web Configuration Settings

The last section of the System Setting menu allows the configuration of the HTTP and HTTPS Ports used for the web server of the WEBUI.

Web Configuration Settings

HTTP Port

HTTP SSL

HTTP SSL PORT

HTTPD Access From LAN

LAN access

WARNING: When LAN access is turned off, web configuration will only be available through a WAN connection!

Image 4-1-4: System Settings > Web Configuration Settings

### HTTP Port

The default web server port for the web based configuration tools used in the VIP4G is port 80. If a non standard port is used, it must be specified in a internet browser to access the unit. (example: http://192.168.168.1:8080)

Values (port#)

80

### HTTP SSL Port

The secure web port (HTTPS) can be enabled or disabled using the **HTTP SSL** On/Off drop down menu. If enabled, the port used can be specified, the default is port 443.

Values (port#)

443

### LAN Access

This option can be used to disable LAN access of the HTTP WebUI port. If disabled, connection can only be made from the WAN side (Wired or 4G).

Values (selection)

On / Off

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.3 System > Access Control

#### Password Change

The Password Change menu allows the password of the user 'admin' to be changed. The 'admin' username cannot be deleted, but additional users can be defined and deleted as required as seen in the Users menu below.

The screenshot shows the 'Access Control' menu with the following sections:

- Access Control**
  - Password Change**
    - User Name : admin
    - New Password :  (min 5 characters)
    - Confirm Password:  [Change Passwd](#)
  - Add User: ( Note: Changes will not take effect until the system is rebooted )**
    - Username :  (5-32 characters)
    - Password  (min 5 characters)
    - Confirm Password
    - Carrier [Hide Submenu](#)
    - Comport [Hide Submenu](#)
    - Firewall [Hide Submenu](#)
    - GPS [Hide Submenu](#)
    - I/O [Hide Submenu](#)
    - MultiWAN [Hide Submenu](#)
    - Network [Hide Submenu](#)
    - System [Hide Submenu](#)
    - Tools [Hide Submenu](#)
    - VPN [Hide Submenu](#)
    - Wireless [Hide Submenu](#)
    - [Add User](#)

Image 4-1-5: Access Control > Password Change

#### New Password

Enter a new password for the 'admin' user. It must be at least 5 characters in length. The default password for 'admin' is 'admin'.

#### Values (characters)

admin

min 5 characters

#### Confirm Password

The exact password must be entered to confirm the password change, if there is a mistake all changes will be discarded.

#### Values (characters)

admin

min 5 characters

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.3 System > Access Control

#### Users

Different users can be set up with customized access to the WebUI. Each menu or tab of the WebUI can be disabled on a per user basis as seen below.

Add User: ( Note: Changes will not take effect until the system is rebooted )

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| Username :       | <input type="text"/> (5-32)      |
| Password         | <input type="password"/> (min 5) |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/>         |
| Carrier          | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Comport          | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Firewall         | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| GPS              | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| I/O              | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| MultiWAN         | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Network          | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| System           | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Tools            | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| VPN              | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Wireless         | Hide Submenu ▾                   |
| Add User         | Add User                         |

Users Summary

No users defined.

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| Carrier         | Show Submenu ▾ |
| Status          | Disable ▾      |
| Settings        | Disable ▾      |
| Keepalive       | Disable ▾      |
| TrafficWatchdog | Disable ▾      |
| DynamicDNS      | Disable ▾      |
| SMSConfig       | Disable ▾      |
| SMS             | Disable ▾      |
| DataUsage       | Disable ▾      |
| Comport         | Show Submenu ▾ |
| Status          | Disable ▾      |
| Settings        | Disable ▾      |
| Firewall        | Show Submenu ▾ |
| Status          | Disable ▾      |
| General         | Disable ▾      |
| Rules           | Disable ▾      |
| PortForwarding  | Disable ▾      |
| MACIPList       | Disable ▾      |
| GPS             | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| I/O             | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| MultiWAN        | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| Network         | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| System          | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| Tools           | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| VPN             | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| Wireless        | Hide Submenu ▾ |
| Add User        | Add User       |

Image 4-1-6: Access Control > Users

#### Username

Enter the desired username. Minimum of 5 character and maximum of 32 character. Changes will not take effect until the system has been restarted.

#### Values (characters)

(no default)  
Min 5 characters  
Max 32 characters

#### Password / Confirm Password

Passwords must be a minimum of 5 characters. The Password must be re-entered exactly in the Confirm Password box as well.

#### Values (characters)

(no default)  
min 5 characters

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.4 System > Services

#### Available Services

Certain services in the VIP4G can be disabled or enabled for either security considerations or resource/power considerations. The Enable/Disable options are applied after a reboot and will take affect after each start up. The Start/Restart/Stop functions only apply to the current session and will not be retained after a power cycle.

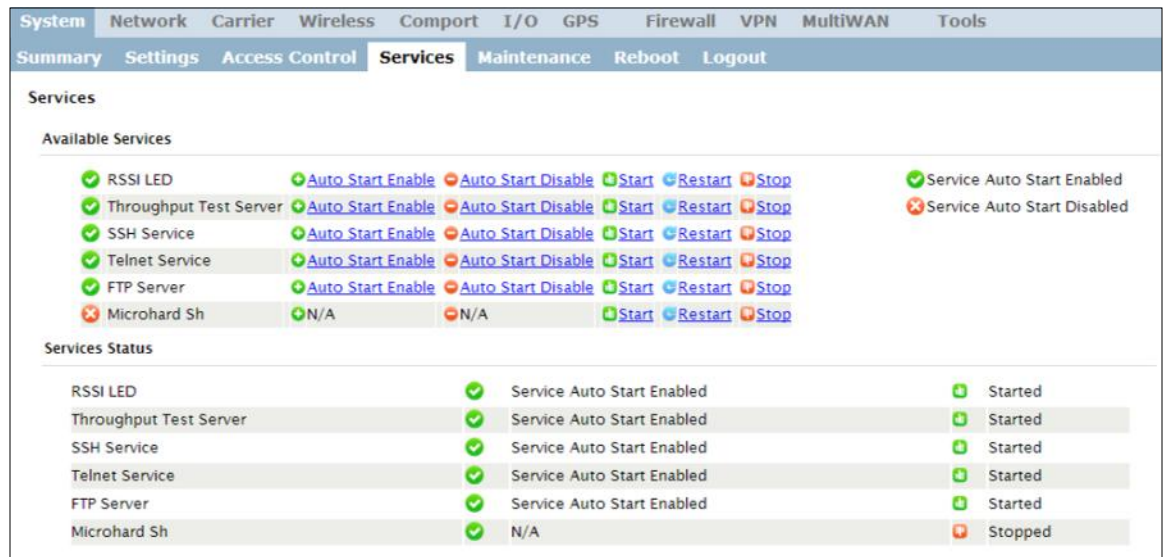


Image 4-1-7: System > Services

#### RSSI LED

The VIP4G has the ability to turn off the RSSI LED's. The RSSI value can still be read from the unit, but the status will not be visible on the unit itself .

#### Values (selection)

Enable / Disable

#### Throughput Test Server

For testing purposes the VIP4G has an internal iperf server that can be used to test unit performance. The user must install a iperf client to use this functionality.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / Disable

#### SSH Service

Using the SSH Service Enable/Disable function, you can disable the SSH service (Port 22) from running on the VIP4G.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / Disable

## 4.0 Configuration

### Telnet Service

Using the Telnet Service Enable/Disable function, you can disable the Telnet service (Port 23) from running on the VIP4G.

#### Values (characters)

**Enable** / Disable

### FTP Server

Using the FTP Service Enable/Disable function, you can disable the FTP service (Port 21) from running on the VIP4G. This port is reserved for internal use / future use.

#### Values (selection)

**Start** / Restart / Stop

### Microhard Sh

Custom SSH Port. Reserved for internal use.

#### Values (selection)

Start / Restart / **Stop**



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.5 System > Power Saving (Factory Installed Option)

**The Power Saving feature of the VIP4G is only available in firmware version 1.1.6-1170 or later. It also requires a factory installed modification that must be specified at the time of order, or returned to the factory for an upgrade.**

The Power Saving feature of the VIP4G works with the IGN line located on the PWR connector. It was designed with vehicle systems in mind, but could be useful in other applications. The VIP4G must run for at least 5 minutes before power saving will work.

The VIP4G requires that the IGN line be ON (1.8 - 32V) to boot up and perform normal operations. If the IGN line goes OFF (Less than 1.8V) or floating (The Ignition of the vehicle turned OFF), the VIP4G will then look at the Power Down Delay and start counting down to when it will turn itself off. It will also look at the Power Down Voltage, if the voltage drops below the set value, the VIP4G will power down.

The VIP4G will power up and resume normal operation once the IGN line is returned to the ON state.

Image 4-1-8: System > Power Saving

#### Power Saving Status

Enable or disable the power saving feature of the VIP4G. If enabled, it requires that the IGN line is high to run, if IGN is low it will initiate the power down delay.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / **Disable**

#### Power Down Delay

Once the VIP4G is running for at least five minutes, and the IGN line goes low (less than 1.8V), the VIP4G will stay on for the amount of time (minutes) defined here.

#### Values (minutes)

60

#### Power Down Voltage

The VIP4G can be configured to power down if the supply voltage drops below the value defined here. This ensures that the unit will power down before it causes a significant drain on the vehicles battery.

#### Values (8 - 32 V))

10



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.6 System > Maintenance

#### Version Information

Detailed version information can be found on this display. The Product Name, Firmware Version, Hardware Type, Build Version, Build Date and Build Time can all be seen here, and may be requested from Microhard Systems to provide technical support.

The screenshot shows the 'microhard SYSTEMS INC.' logo at the top. Below it is a navigation bar with tabs: System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. Under the 'System' tab, there are sub-tabs: Summary, Settings, Access Control, Services, Maintenance (selected), Reboot, and Logout. The 'System Maintenance' section is active, showing 'Version Information' and 'Firmware Upgrade' options.

| Product Name | Part No.  | Serial No. | Hardware Type | Build Version     | Build Date | Build Time |
|--------------|-----------|------------|---------------|-------------------|------------|------------|
| VIP4C_WIFI_N | MHS116700 | 1057883    | v2.0.0        | v1.1.6 build 1170 | 2014-03-06 | 16:12:10   |

**Firmware Upgrade**

Erase Current Configuration:  (dropdown menu)

Firmware Image:  No file chosen

Upgrade:

Image 4-1-9: Maintenance > Version Information / Firmware Upgrade

#### Firmware Upgrade

Occasional firmware updates may be releases by Microhard Systems which include fixes and new features. The firmware can be updated here wirelessly using the WebUI.

#### Erase Current Configuration

Allows a user to select if the unit is to keep its current configuration, erase its configuration, or to erase the configuration, but keep Carrier Settings during the firmware upgrade process.

##### Values (selection)

**Keep ALL Configuration**  
Keep Carrier Configuration  
Erase Configuration

#### Firmware Image

Use the Browse button to find the firmware file supplied by Microhard Systems. Select "Upgrade Firmware" to start the upgrade process. This can take several minutes.

##### Values (file)

(no default)

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.6 System > Maintenance

#### Reset to Default

The VIP4G may be set back to factory defaults by using the Reset to Default option under System > Maintenance > Reset to Default. **\*Caution\* - All settings will be lost!!!**

Image 4-1-10: Maintenance > Reset to Default / Backup & Restore Configuration

#### Backup & Restore Configuration

The configuration of the VIP4G can be backed up to a file at any time using the Backup Configuration feature. The file can be restored using the Restore Configuration feature. It is always a good idea to backup any configurations in case of unit replacement. The configuration files cannot be edited offline, they are used strictly to backup and restore units.

#### Name this Configuration / Backup Configuration

Use this field to name the configuration file. The .config extension will automatically be added to the configuration file.

#### Restore Configuration file / Check Restore File / Restore

Use the 'Browse' button to find the backup file that needs to be restored to the unit. Use the 'Check Restore File' button to verify that the file is valid, and then the option to restore the configuration is displayed, as seen above.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.1.7 System > Reboot

The VIP4G can be remotely rebooted using the System > Reboot menu. As seen below a button 'OK, reboot now' is provided. Once pressed, the unit immediately reboots and starts its boot up procedure.

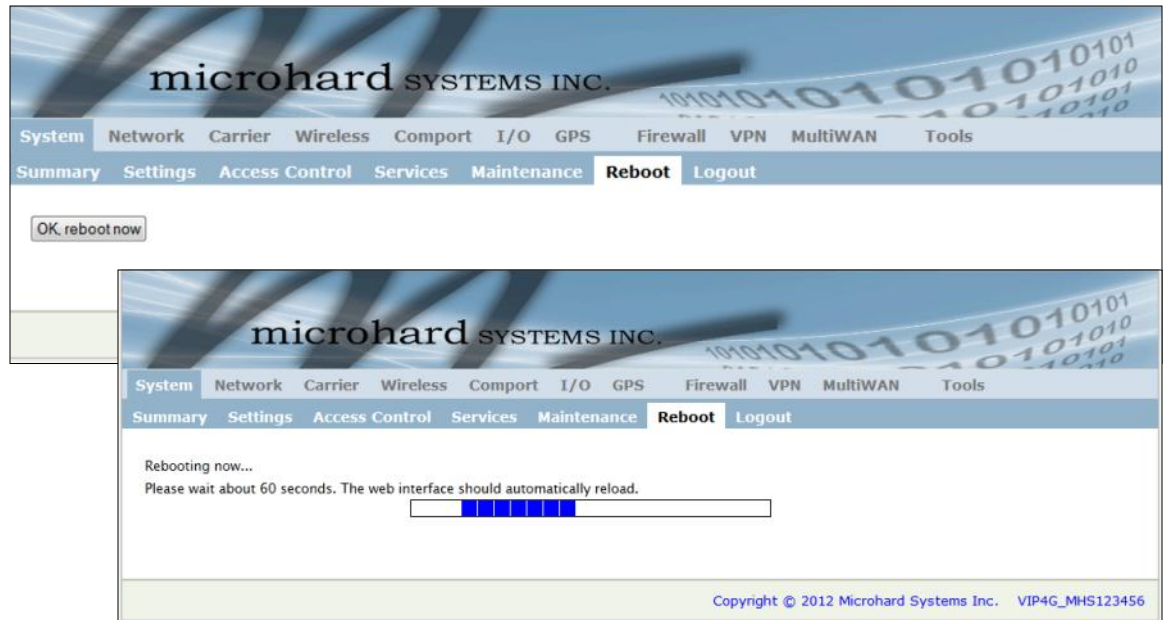


Image 4-1-11: System > Reboot

### 4.1.8 System > Logout

The logout function allows a user to end the current configuration session and prompt for a login screen.

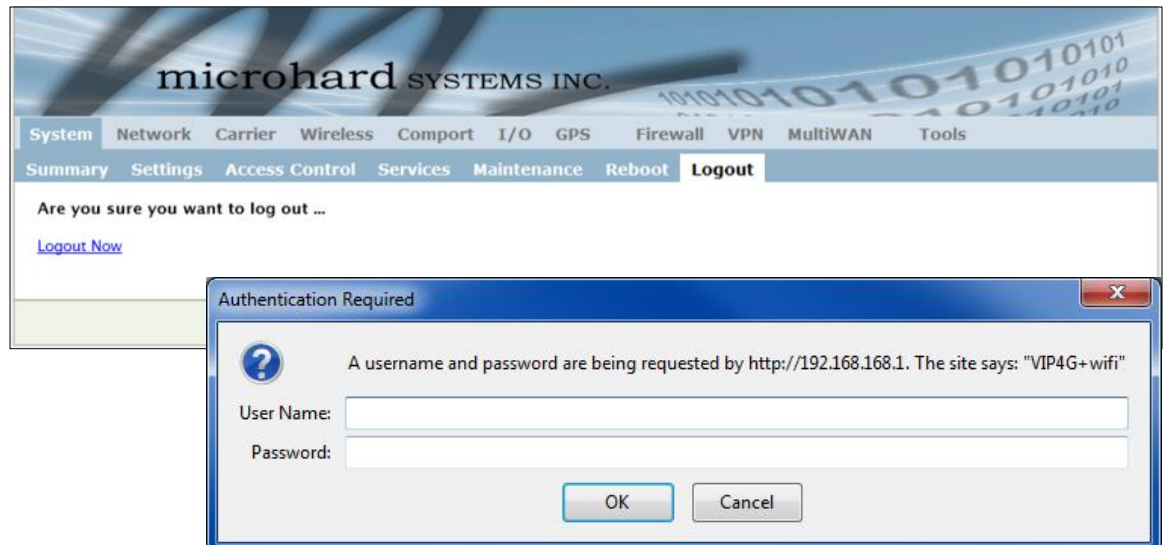


Image 4-1-12: System > logout

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2 Network

#### 4.2.1 Network > Status

The Network Status display gives a overview of the currently configured network interfaces including the Connection Type (Static/DHCP), IP Address, Net Mask, Default Gateway, DNS, and IPv4 Routing Table.

**microhard SYSTEMS INC.**

System Network Carrier Wireless Comport I/O GPS Firewall VPN MultiWAN Tools

**Status** LAN WAN Switch Routes GRE SNMP sdpServer LocalMonitor

**Network Status**

**LAN Port Status**

**General Status**

| IP Address    | Connection Type | Net Mask      | MAC Address       |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 192.168.168.1 | static          | 255.255.255.0 | 00:0F:92:00:B5:73 |

**Traffic Status**

| Receive bytes | Receive packets | Transmit bytes | Transmit packets |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 313.242KB     | 2314            | 550.914KB      | 813              |

**LAN Port Status**

**General Status**

| IP Address    | Connection Type | Net Mask      | MAC Address       |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 192.168.168.1 | static          | 255.255.255.0 | 00:0F:92:00:B5:73 |

**Traffic Status**

| Receive bytes | Receive packets | Transmit bytes | Transmit packets |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 313.288KB     | 2316            | 552.227KB      | 814              |

**Default Gateway**

| Gateway        |
|----------------|
| 74.198.186.198 |

**DNS**

| DNS Server(s)                  |
|--------------------------------|
| 64.71.255.205<br>64.71.255.253 |

**IPv4 Routing Table**

| Destination    | Gateway        | Netmask         | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Interface |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-----|-----|-----------|
| 74.198.186.196 | 0.0.0.0        | 255.255.255.252 | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | (br-wan2) |
| 192.168.168.0  | 0.0.0.0        | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | (br-lan)  |
| 0.0.0.0        | 74.198.186.198 | 0.0.0.0         | UG    | 0      | 0   | 0   | (br-wan2) |

[Stop Refreshing](#) Interval: 20 (in seconds)

Copyright © 2012 Microhard Systems Inc. VIP4G\_WIFI\_N

Image 4-2-1: Network > Network Status

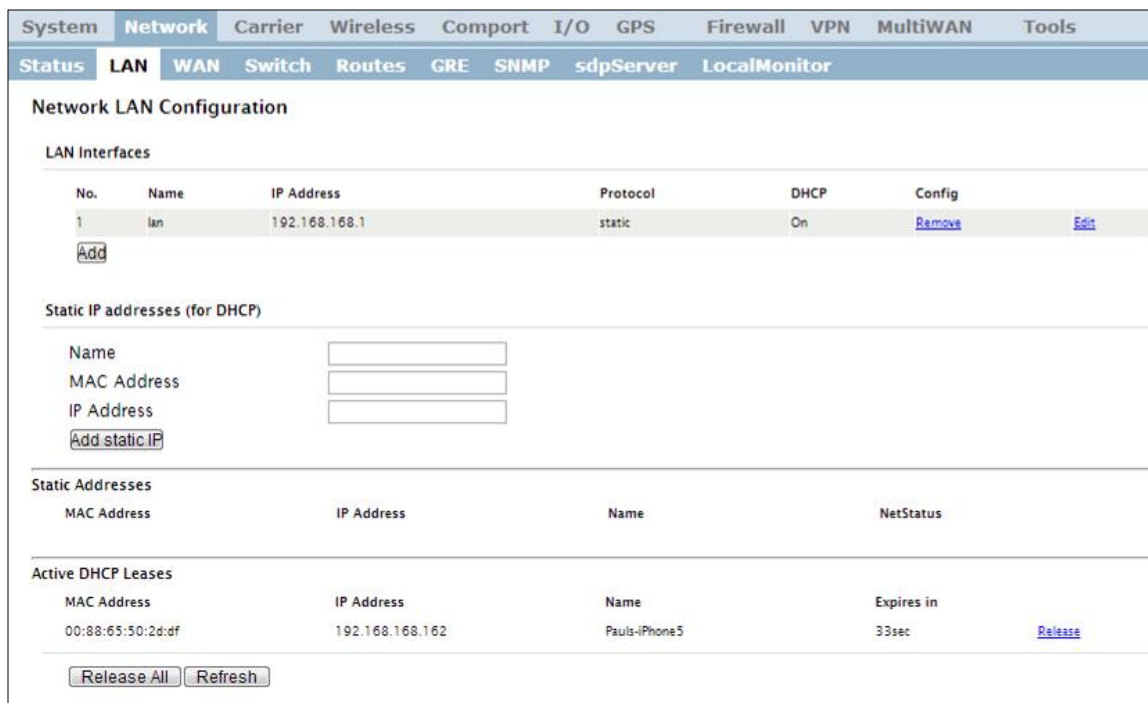


## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.2 Network > LAN

#### Network LAN Configuration

The Ethernet port (RJ45) on the back of the VIP4G is the LAN port, used for connection of devices on a local network. By default, this port has a static IP Address of 192.168.168.1. It also, by default is running a DHCP server to provide IP Addresses to devices that are connected to the physical port, and devices connected by a WiFi connection (if equipped).



| System | Network | Carrier | Wireless | Comport | I/O | GPS  | Firewall  | VPN          | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|---------|-----|------|-----------|--------------|----------|-------|
| Status | LAN     | WAN     | Switch   | Routes  | GRE | SNMP | sdpServer | LocalMonitor |          |       |

#### Network LAN Configuration

##### LAN Interfaces

| No. | Name | IP Address    | Protocol | DHCP | Config                                      |
|-----|------|---------------|----------|------|---|
| 1   | lan  | 192.168.168.1 | static   | On   | <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Edit</a> |

[Add](#)

##### Static IP addresses (for DHCP)

Name:   
 MAC Address:   
 IP Address:   
[Add static IP](#)

##### Static Addresses

| MAC Address | IP Address | Name | NetStatus |
|-------------|------------|------|-----------|
|-------------|------------|------|-----------|

##### Active DHCP Leases

| MAC Address       | IP Address      | Name          | Expires in |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| 00:88:65:50:2d:df | 192.168.168.162 | Pauls-iPhone5 | 33sec      |

[Release All](#) [Refresh](#)

Image 4-2-2: Network > LAN Configuration

#### LAN Add/Edit Interface

The VIP4G has the capability to have multiple SSID's for the WiFi radio (optional). New Interfaces can be added for additional SSID's, providing, if required, separate subnets for each SSID. By default any additional interfaces added will automatically assign IP addresses to connecting devices via DHCP. Additional interfaces can only be used by additional WIFI SSID's (virtual interfaces).



#### Network LAN Configuration

##### lan Configuration

Spanning Tree (STP):    
 Connection Type:    
 IP Address:   
 Netmask:   
 Default Gateway:

##### lan DNS Servers

DNS Server 1:

Image 4-2-3: Network > Add/Edit LAN Interface



**DHCP:** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol may be used by networked devices (Clients) to obtain unique network addresses from a DHCP server.

**Advantage:**

Ensures unique IP addresses are assigned, from a central point (DHCP server) within a network.

**Disadvantage:**

The address of a particular device is not 'known' and is also subject to change.

STATIC addresses must be tracked (to avoid duplicate use), yet they may be permanently assigned to a device.

## 4.0 Configuration



Within any IP network, each device must have its own unique IP address.



A SUBNET MASK is a bit mask that separates the network and host (device) portions of an IP address.

The 'unmasked' portion leaves available the information required to identify the various devices on the subnet.



A GATEWAY is a point within a network that acts as an entrance to another network.

In typical networks, a router acts as a gateway.



DNS: Domain Name Service is an Internet service that translates easily-remembered domain names into their not-so-easily-remembered IP addresses.

Being that the Internet is based on IP addresses, without DNS, if one entered the domain name [www.microhardcorp.com](http://www.microhardcorp.com) (for example) into the URL line of a web browser, the website 'could not be found'.

### Spanning Tree (STP)

Use this option to enable or disable the use of Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

#### Values (selection)

On  
Off

### Connection Type

This selection determines if the VIP4G will obtain an IP address from a DHCP server on the attached network, or if a static IP address will be entered. If a Static IP Address is chosen, the fields that follow must also be populated.

#### Values (selection)

DHCP  
Static

### IP Address

If 'Static' Connection Type is selected, a valid IPv4 Address for the network being used must be entered in the field. If 'DHCP' is chosen this field will not appear and it will be populated automatically from the DHCP server.

#### Values (IP Address)

192.168.168.1

### Netmask

If 'Static' Connection Type is selected, the Network Mask must be entered for the Network. If 'DHCP' is chosen this field will not appear and it will be populated automatically from the DHCP server.

#### Values (IP Address)

255.255.255.0

### Default Gateway

If the VIP4G is integrated into a network which has a defined gateway, then, as with other hosts on the network, this gateway's IP address will be entered into this field. If there is a DHCP server on the network, and the Connection Type (see previous page) is selected to be DHCP, the DHCP server will populate this field with the appropriate gateway address.

#### Values (IP Address)

(no default)

A simple way of looking at what the gateway value should be is: If a device has a packet of data it does not know where to send, send it to the gateway. If necessary - and applicable - the gateway can forward the packet onwards to another network.

### LAN DNS Servers

DNS (Domain Name Service) Servers are used to resolve domain names into IP addresses. If the Connection Type is set for DHCP the DHCP server will populate this field and the value set can be viewed on the Network > Status page.

#### Values (IP Address)

(no default)



## 4.0 Configuration

### LAN DHCP

A VIP4G may be configured to provide dynamic host control protocol (DHCP) service to all attached (either wired or wireless (WiFi)-connected) devices. By default the DHCP service is enabled, so devices that are connected to the physical Ethernet LAN ports, as well as any devices that are connected by WiFi will be assigned an IP by the VIP4G.



Prior to enabling this service, verify that there are no other devices - either wired (e.g. LAN) or wireless (e.g. another VIP Series unit) with an active DHCP SERVER service. (The Server issues IP address information at the request of a DHCP Client, which receives the information.)

| LAN DHCP                |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| DHCP Server             | Enable ▾        |
| Start                   | 192.168.168.100 |
| Limit                   | 150             |
| Lease Time (in minutes) | 2               |
| Alternate Gateway       |                 |
| Preferred DNS server    |                 |
| Alternate DNS server    |                 |
| Domain Name             | lan             |
| WINS/NBNS Servers       |                 |
| WINS/NBT Node Type      | none ▾          |

Image 4-2-4: Network > Add/Edit Interface DHCP

#### DHCP

The option is used to enable or disable the DHCP service for devices connected to the LAN Port and devices connected through a Wireless connection. This includes VIP connected as clients and other wireless devices such as 802.11 connections.

#### Values (selection)

On / Off

#### Start

Select the starting address DHCP assignable IP Addresses. The first octets of the subnet will be pre-set based on the LAN IP configuration, and can not be changed.

#### Values (IP Address)

192.168.168.100

#### Limit

Set the maximum number of IP addresses that can be assigned by the VIP4G.

#### Values (integer)

150

#### Lease Time

The DHCP lease time is the amount of time before a new request for a network address must be made to the DHCP Server.

#### Values (minutes)

(minutes)

## 4.0 Configuration

### Alternate Gateway

Specify an alternate gateway for DHCP assigned devices if the default gateway is not to be used.

Values (IP Address)

(IP Address)

### Preferred DNS Server

Specify a preferred DNS server address to be assigned to DHCP devices.

Values (IP Address)

(IP Address)

### Alternate DNS Server

Specify the alternate DNS server address to be assigned to DHCP devices.

Values (IP Address)

(IP Address)

### Domain Name

Enter the Domain Name for the DHCP devices.

Values (string)

(IP Address)

### WINS/NBNS Servers

Enter the address of the WINS/NBNS (NetBIOS) Server. The WINS server will translate computers names into their IP addresses, similar to how a DNS server translates domain names to IP addresses.

Values (IP/Domain)

(no default)

### WINS/NBT Node Type

Select the method used to resolve computer names to IP addresses. Four name resolution methods are available:

B-node: broadcast

P-node: point-to-point

M-node: mixed/modified

H-node: hybrid

Values (selection)

**none**

b-node

p-node

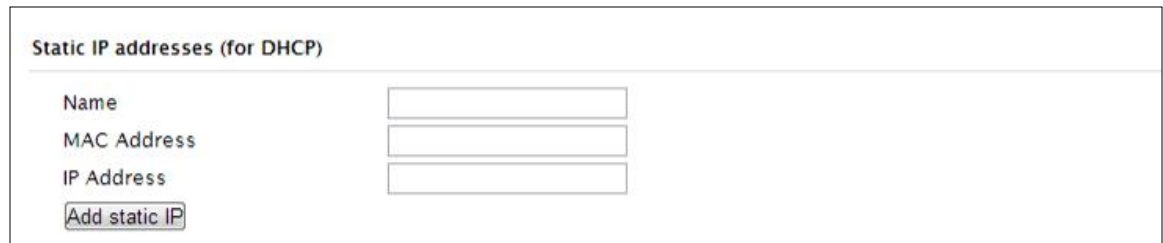
m-node

h-node

## 4.0 Configuration

### Static IP Addresses (for DHCP)

In some applications it is important that specific devices always have a predetermined IP address. This section allows for MAC Address binding to a IP Address, so that whenever the device that has the specified MAC address, will always get the selected IP address. In this situation, all attached (wired or wireless) devices can all be configured for DHCP, but still get a known IP address.



Static IP addresses (for DHCP)

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| Name   | <input type="text"/> |
| MAC Address                                  | <input type="text"/> |
| IP Address                                   | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Add static IP"/> |                      |

Image 4-2-5: Network > MAC Address Binding

#### Name

The name field is used to give the device a easily recognizable name.

Values (characters)

(no default)

#### MAC Address

Enter in the MAC address of the device to be bound to a set IP address. Set the IP Address in the next field. Must use the format: AB:CD:DF:12:34:D3. It is not case sensitive, but the colons must be present.

Values (MAC Address)

(no default)

#### IP Address

Enter the IP Address to be assign to the device specified by the MAC address above.

Values (IP Address)

(minutes)

### Static Addresses

This section displays the IP address and MAC address currently assigned through the DCHP service, that are bound by it's MAC address. Also shown is the Name, and the ability to remove the binding by clicking "Remove \_\_\_\_\_".

### Active DHCP Leases

This section displays the IP Addresses currently assigned through the DCHP service. Also shown is the MAC Address, Name and Expiry time of the lease for reference.

### Network Interfaces

When additional Network Interfaces are added, they will show up here in a list. You can remove Network Interfaces by clicking "Remove \_\_\_\_\_".

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.3 Network > WAN

#### WAN Configuration

The WAN configuration refers to the wired WAN connection on the VIP4G. The WAN port can be used to connect the VIP4G to other networks, the internet and/or other network resources.

Image 4-2-6: Network > WAN Configuration



**DHCP:** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol may be used by networked devices (Clients) to obtain unique network addresses from a DHCP server.

**Advantage:**  
Ensures unique IP addresses are assigned, from a central point (DHCP server) within a network.

**Disadvantage:**  
The address of a particular device is not 'known' and is also subject to change.

STATIC addresses must be tracked (to avoid duplicate use), yet they may be permanently assigned to a device.

#### Working Mode

Use this to set the function of the physical WAN RJ45 port. If set to independent, the physical WAN port will operate as a standard WAN port, if disabled, the physical port will operate as another LAN port on the LAN.

##### Values (selection)

**Independent**  
Bridge to LAN

#### Connection Type

This selection determines if the VIP4G will obtain an WAN IP address from a DHCP server, or if a static IP address will be entered. If a Static IP Address is chosen, the fields that follow must also be populated.

##### Values (selection)

**DHCP**  
Static

#### IP Address

If 'Static' Connection Type is selected, a valid IPv4 Address for the network being used must be entered in the field. If 'DHCP' is chosen this field will not appear and it will be populated automatically from the DHCP server.

##### Values (IP Address)

(no default)

#### Netmask

If 'Static' Connection Type is selected, the Network Mask must be entered for the Network. If 'DHCP' is chosen this field will not appear and it will be populated automatically from the DHCP server.

##### Values (IP Address)

(no default)

## 4.0 Configuration

### Default Gateway

If the VIP4G is integrated into a network which has a defined gateway, then, as with other hosts on the network, this gateway's IP address will be entered into this field. If there is a DHCP server on the network, and the Connection Type (see previous page) is selected to be DHCP, the DHCP server will populate this field with the appropriate gateway address.

#### Values (IP Address)

*(no default)*

### WAN Static DNS Servers

DNS (Domain Name Service) Servers are used to resolve domain names into IP addresses. If the Connection Type is set for DHCP the DHCP server will populate this field and the value set can be viewed on the Network > Status page. To add additional static servers, enter them here.

#### Values (IP Address)

*(no default)*

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.4 Network > Switch

The VIP4G has the capability to add multiple network interfaces. It may also be desirable to segment these different subnets. The VIP4G features two different VLAN mode, Port Based, and 802.1Q VLAN.

In port based VLAN port membership is exclusive, a port can only belong to a single VLAN, and is generally used to separate the different subnets. In a port based VLAN every port should be a Untagged Member, not a Tagged Member.

802.1Q VLAN uses tagging to allow separation of network segments. Ports can belong to multiple VLANs. A Trunk port can be configured to communicate with other VLAN switch by adding all configured VLANs to a single port. The native VLAN1 is used by default, it is important that any connected VLAN switch use the same Native VLAN.

| Ethernet Switch Setup |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--|
| VLAN Mode             |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
| Port based            |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
| VLAN Configuration    |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
| VLAN ID               | 2 [2..127]      |                 |                 |                 |  |
| VLAN Name             | vlan2           |                 |                 |                 |  |
| Port1                 | Untagged Member |                 |                 |                 |  |
| Port2                 | Untagged Member |                 |                 |                 |  |
| Port3                 | Untagged Member |                 |                 |                 |  |
| Add VLAN              |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
| VLAN Summary          |                 |                 |                 |                 |  |
| VLAN ID               | VLAN Name       | Port1           | Port2           | Port3           |  |
| 1                     | vlan1           | Untagged Member | Untagged Member | Untagged Member |  |

Image 4-2-7: Network > Switch

#### VLAN Mode

By default the VIP4G is configured to Port Based VLAN with all ports bridged. See above description for differences between Port Based and Tagged VLANs.

#### Values (selection)

**Port Based**  
802.1Q (Tagged)

#### Native VLAN

If 802.1Q is selected for the VLAN mode, the Native VLAN can be configured here. It is important for switch-to-switch connections to use a consistent Native VLAN.

#### Values

1



## 4.0 Configuration

### VLAN Mode

By default the VIP4G is configured to Port Based VLAN with all ports bridged. See above description for differences between Port Based and Tagged VLANs.

#### Values (selection)

**Port Based**  
802.1Q (Tagged)

### Native VLAN

If 802.1Q is selected for the VLAN mode, the Native VLAN can be configured here. It is important for switch-to-switch connections to use a consistent Native VLAN.

#### Values

1

### VLAN ID

When adding a VLAN you must select a VLAN ID. Select between 2 and 127 for valid VLAN IDs.

#### Values

2 (2-127)

### VLAN Name

VLAN names can be added to aid in VLAN identification (purpose, I.e Engineering, Accounting, etc).

#### Values

*vlan2*

### Port 1 - 3

Assign port to the current VLAN.

#### Values (selection)

**Exclude:** Not part of the current VLAN

Exclude  
Tagged Member  
**Untagged Member**

**Tagged Member:** In 802.1Q this assigns the current VLAN to the port,

**Untagged Member:** In port based VLAN this assigns a port to the current VLAN. As mentioned previously, in port based VLAN, ports can only belong to a single VLAN.

### Network

Allows the user the ability to assign specific configured network interfaces to a specific VLAN. (802.1Q)

#### Values (selection)

**None**  
LAN  
(additional network interfaces)

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.5 Network > Routes

#### Static Routes Configuration

It may be desirable to have devices on different subnets to be able to talk to one another. This can be accomplished by specifying a static route, telling the VIP4G where to send data.

| Static Route Configuration       |               |         |         |        |           |
|----------------------------------|---------------|---------|---------|--------|-----------|
| Name                             | route1        |         |         |        |           |
| Destination                      | 192.168.168.0 |         |         |        |           |
| Gateway                          | 192.168.168.1 |         |         |        |           |
| Netmask                          | 255.255.255.0 |         |         |        |           |
| Metric                           | 0             |         |         |        |           |
| Interface                        | LAN           |         |         |        |           |
| <a href="#">Add Static Route</a> |               |         |         |        |           |
| Static Route Summary             |               |         |         |        |           |
| Name                             | Destination   | Gateway | Netmask | Metric | Interface |

Image 4-2-8: Network > Routes

#### Name

Routes can be names for easy reference, or to describe the route being added.

**Values (characters)**

(no default)

#### Destination

Enter the network IP address for the destination.

**Values (IP Address)**

(192.168.168.0)

#### Gateway

Specify the Gateway used to reach the network specified above.

**Values (IP Address)**

192.168.168.1

#### Netmask

Enter the Netmask for the destination network.

**Values (IP Address)**

255.255.255.0

## 4.0 Configuration

### Metric

In some cases there may be multiple routes to reach a destination. The Metric can be set to give certain routes priority, the lower the metric is, the better the route. The more hops it takes to get to a destination, the higher the metric.

### Values (Integer)

0

### Interface

Define the exit interface. Is the destination a device on the LAN, or the WAN?

### Values (Selection)

LAN  
WAN  
4G  
None

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.6 Network > GRE

#### GRE Configuration

The VIP4G supports GRE (Generic Routing Encapsulation) Tunneling which can encapsulate a wide variety of network layer protocols not supported by traditional VPN. This allows IP packets to travel from one side of a GRE tunnel to the other without being parsed or treated like IP packets.

| System         | Network  | Carrier | Wireless  | Comport | I/O | GPS     | Firewall                       | VPN            | MultiWAN                       | Tools          |   |             |             |
|----------------|----------|---------|-----------|---------|-----|---------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|---|-------------|-------------|
| Status         | LAN      | WAN     | Switch    | Routes  | GRE | SNMP    | sdpServer                      | LocalMonitor   |                                |                |   |             |             |
| Summary        |          |         |           |         |     |         |                                |                |                                |                |   |             |             |
| No.            | Name     | Status  | Multicast | ARP     | TTL | IPsec   | Local Tunnel IP                | Local Gateway  | Local Subnet                   | Remote Gateway | Remote Subnet                           | RX/TX Bytes | Tunnel Test |
| 1              | tunnel_1 | Enable  | Disable   | Disable |     | Disable | 192.168.168.1<br>255.255.255.0 | 74.186.198.197 | 192.168.168.1<br>255.255.255.0 | 74.186.198.195 | 192.168.20.1<br>255.255.255.0           |             | N/A         |
| <div>Add</div> |          |         |           |         |     |         |                                |                |                                |                | <div>Stop Refreshing</div> Interval: 20 |             |             |

Image 4-2-9: Network > GRE Summary

| System               | Network                             | Carrier | Wireless | Comport | I/O | GPS  | Firewall  | VPN          | MultiWAN | Tools |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------|----------|---------|-----|------|-----------|--------------|----------|-------|
| Status               | LAN                                 | WAN     | Switch   | Routes  | GRE | SNMP | sdpServer | LocalMonitor |          |       |
| <b>Edit a Tunnel</b> |                                     |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Name                 | tunnel_1                            |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Enable               | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Multicast            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| TTL                  | 255                                 |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Key                  | password                            |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| ARP                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Interface            | 4G                                  |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| <b>Local Setup</b>   |                                     |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Gateway IP Address   | 74.186.198.197                      |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Tunnel IP Address    | 192.168.168.1                       |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Netmask              | 255.255.255.0                       |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Subnet IP Address    | 192.168.168.1                       |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Subnet Mask          | 255.255.255.0                       |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| <b>Remote Setup</b>  |                                     |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Gateway IP Address   | 74.186.198.195                      |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Subnet IP Address    | 192.168.20.1                        |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Subnet Mask          | 255.255.255.0                       |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| <b>IPsec Setup</b>   |                                     |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |
| Enable               | None                                |         |          |         |     |      |           |              |          |       |

Image 4-2-10: Network > Edit/Add GRE Tunnel

Name

Each GRE tunnel must have a unique name. Up to 10 GRE tunnels are supported by the VIP4G.

Values (Chars(32))

gre

## 4.0 Configuration

### Enable

Enable / Disable the GRE Tunnel.

Values (selection)

Disable / **Enable**

### Multicast

Enable / Disable Multicast support over the GRE tunnel.

Values (selection)

Disable / **Enable**

### TTL

Set the TTL (Time-to-live) value for packets traveling through the GRE tunnel.

Values (value)

1 - **255**

### Key

Enter a key is required, key must be the same for each end of the GRE tunnel.

Values (chars)

(none)

### ARP

Enable / Disable ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) support over the GRE tunnel.

Values (selection)

Disable / **Enable**

### Local Setup

The local setup refers to the local side of the GRE tunnel, as opposed to the remote end.

### Gateway IP Address

This is the WAN IP Address of the VIP4G, this field should be populated with the current WAN IP address.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Tunnel IP Address

This is the IP Address of the local tunnel.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Netmask

Enter the subnet mask of the local tunnel IP address.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

## 4.0 Configuration

### Subnet IP Address

Enter the subnet address for the local network.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Subnet Mask

The subnet mask for the local network/subnet.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Remote Setup

The remote setup tells the VIP4G about the remote end, the IP address to create the tunnel to, and the subnet that is accessible on the remote side of the tunnel.

### Gateway IP Address

Enter the WAN IP Address of the VIP4G or other GRE supported device in which a tunnel is to be created with at the remote end.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Subnet IP Address

This is the IP Address of the remote network, on the remote side of the GRE Tunnel.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### Subnet Mask

This is the subnet mask for the remote network/subnet.

Values (IP Address)

(varies)

### IPsec Setup

Refer to the IPsec setup in the VPN Site to Site section of the manual for more information.



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.7 Network > SNMP

The VIP4G may be configured to operate as a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent. Network management is most important in larger networks, so as to be able to manage resources and measure performance. SNMP may be used in several ways:

- configure remote devices
- monitor network performance
- detect faults
- audit network usage
- detect authentication failures



SNMP: Simple Network Management Protocol provides a method of managing network devices from a single PC running network management software.

Managed networked devices are referred to as SNMP agents.

A SNMP management system (a PC running SNMP management software) is required for this service to operate. This system must have full access to the VIP4G. Communications is in the form of queries (information requested by the management system) or traps (information initiated at, and provided by, the SNMP agent in response to predefined events).

Objects specific to the VIP4G are hosted under private enterprise number **21703**.

An object is a variable in the device and is defined by a Management Information Database (MIB). Both the management system and the device have a copy of the MIB. The MIB in the management system provides for identification and processing of the information sent by a device (either responses to queries or device-sourced traps). The MIB in the device relates subroutine addresses to objects in order to read data from, or write data to, variables in the device.

An SNMPv1 agent accepts commands to retrieve an object, retrieve the next object, set an object to a specified value, send a value in response to a received command, and send a value in response to an event (trap).

SNMPv2c adds to the above the ability to retrieve a large number of objects in response to a single request.

SNMPv3 adds strong security features including encryption; a shared password key is utilized. Secure device monitoring over the Internet is possible. In addition to the commands noted as supported above, there is a command to synchronize with a remote management station.

The pages that follow describe the different fields required to set up SNMP on the VIP4G. MIBs may be requested from Microhard Systems Inc.

The MIB file can be downloaded directly from the unit using the **'Get MIB File'** button on the Network > SNMP menu.



Image 4-2-11: Network > MIB Download

## 4.0 Configuration

### SNMP Settings

The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Settings' page in the microhard SYSTEMS INC. VIP4G web interface. The page has a navigation bar with tabs for System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for Status, LAN, WAN, Switch, Routes, GRE, SNMP, sdpServer, and LocalMonitor. The 'SNMP' tab is selected, and the 'SNMP Settings' section is displayed. The settings include:

- SNMP Operation Mode: ☐ Disable ☒ V1&V2c&V3
- Read Only Community Name:
- Read Write Community Name:
- SNMP V3 User Name:
- V3 User Read Write Limit: ☒ Read Only ☐ Read Write
- V3 User Authentication Level:
- V3 Authentication Password:
- V3 Privacy Password:
- SNMP Trap Version:
- Auth Failure Traps: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable
- Trap Community Name:
- Trap Manage Host IP:
- SNMP Listening Protocol: ☒ UDP ☐ TCP
- SNMP Listening Port:

At the bottom of the page, there is a 'Download MIB File' section with a 'Get MIB File' button.

Image 4-2-12: Network > SNMP

#### SNMP Operation Mode

If disabled, an SNMP service is not provided from the device. Enabled, the device - now an SNMP agent - can support SNMPv1, v2, & v3.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable / V1&V2c&V3**

#### Read Only Community Name

Effectively a plain-text password mechanism used to weakly authenticate SNMP queries. Being part of the community allows the SNMP agent to process SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests. This community name has only READ priority.

#### Values (string)

**public**

#### Read Only Community Name

Also a plain-text password mechanism used to weakly authenticate SNMP queries. Being part of the community allows the SNMP agent to process SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests. This community name has only READ/WRITE priority.

#### Values (string)

**private**

#### SNMP V3 User Name

Defines the user name for SNMPv3.

#### Values (string)

**V3user**

## 4.0 Configuration

### V3 User Read Write Limit

Defines accessibility of SNMPv3; If Read Only is selected, the SNMPv3 user may only read information; if Read Write is selected, the SNMPv3 user may read and write (set) variables.

Values (selection)

**Read Only** / Read Write

### V3 User Authentication Level

Defines SNMPv3 user's authentication level:

NoAuthNoPriv: No authentication, no encryption.  
AuthNoPriv: Authentication, no encryption.  
AuthPriv: Authentication, encryption.

Values (selection)

**NoAuthNoPriv**  
AuthNoPriv  
AuthPriv

### V3 User Authentication Password

SNMPv3 user's authentication password. Only valid when V3 User Authentication Level set to AuthNoPriv or AuthPriv.

Values (string)

00000000

### V3 User Privacy Password

SNMPv3 user's encryption password. Only valid when V3 User Authentication Level set to AuthPriv (see above).

Values (string)

00000000

### SNMP Trap Version

Select which version of trap will be sent should a failure or alarm condition occur.

Values (string)

**V1 Traps**      V2 Traps  
V3 Traps      V1&V2 Traps  
V1&V2&V3 Traps

### Auth Failure Traps

If enabled, an authentication failure trap will be generated upon authentication failure.

Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

### Trap Community Name

The community name which may receive traps.

Values (string)

TrapUser

### Trap Manage Host IP

Defines a host IP address where traps will be sent to (e.g. SNMP management system PC IP address).

Values (IP Address)

0.0.0.0

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.8 Network > sdpServer

#### sdpServer Settings

Microhard Radio employ a discovery service that can be used to detect other Microhard Radio's on a network. This can be done using a stand alone utility from Microhard System's called 'IP Discovery' or from the Tools > Discovery menu. The discovery service will report the MAC Address, IP Address, Description, Product Name, Firmware Version, Operating Mode, and the SSID.



Image 4-2-13: Network > sdpServer Settings

#### Discovery Service Status

Use this option to disable or enable the discovery service.

##### Values (selection)

Disable / **Discoverable** /  
Changable

#### Server Port Settings

Specify the port running the discovery service on the VIP4G unit.

##### Values (Port #)

20097

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.2.9 Network > Local Monitor

The Local Device Monitor allows the VIP4G to monitor a local device connected locally to the Ethernet port or to the locally attached network. If the VIP4G cannot detect the specified IP or a DHCP assigned IP, the unit will restart the DHCP service, and eventually restart the modem to attempt to recover the connection.

Image 4-2-14: Network Configuration , Local Monitor

#### Status

Enable or disable the local device monitoring service.

Values (selection)

Disable / Enable

#### IP Mode

Select the IP mode. By selecting a fixed IP address the service will monitor the connection to that specific IP. If auto detect is selected, the VIP4G will detect and monitor DHCP assigned IP address.

Values (selection)

Fixed local IP  
Auto Detected IP

#### Local IP Setting

This field is only shown if Fixed Local IP is selected for the IP Mode. Enter the static IP to be monitored in this field.

Values (IP)

0.0.0.0

#### Status Timeout

The status timeout is the maximum time the VIP4G will wait to detect the monitored device. At this time the VIP4G will restart the DHCP service. (5-65535 seconds)

Values (seconds)

10

#### Waiting DHCP Timeout

This field defines the amount of time the VIP4G will wait to detect the monitored device before it will reboot the modem. (30-65535 seconds)

Values (seconds)

60



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3 Carrier

#### 4.3.1 Carrier > Status

The Carrier Status window provides complete overview information related to the Cellular Carrier portion of the VIP4G. A variety of information can be found here, such as Activity Status, Network (Name of Wireless Carrier connected) , Data Service Type WCDMA/HSPA/HSPA+/LTE etc), Frequency band, Phone Number etc.


| System                                  | Network  | Carrier   | Wireless                  | Comport     | I/O        | GPS                           | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN   | Tools |  |
|---|----------|-----------|---------------------------|-------------|------------|-------------------------------|------------|-----|--|-------|--|
| Status                                  | Settings | Keepalive | Traffic Watchdog          | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS                           | Data Usage |     |  |       |  |
| Carrier Status                          |          |           |                           |             |            |                               |            |     |  |       |  |
| Carrier Status                          |          |           |                           |             |            |                               |            |     |  |       |  |
| Current APN                             |          |           | staticip.apn              |             |            | Core Temperature(°C)          |            |     | 45   |       |  |
| Activity Status                         |          |           | Connected                 |             |            | IMEI                          |            |     | 012773002108452  |       |  |
| Network                                 |          |           | ROGERS                    |             |            | SIM PIN                       |            |     | READY  |       |  |
| Home/Roaming                            |          |           | Home                      |             |            | SIM Number (ICCID)            |            |     | 8930272040102535531  |       |  |
| Service Mode                            |          |           | Automatic                 |             |            | Phone Number                  |            |     | +15878938645   |       |  |
| Service State                           |          |           | WCDMA CS and PS           |             |            | RSSI (dBm)                    |            |     | -61  |       |  |
| Cell ID                                 |          |           | 2744979                   |             |            | RSRP (dBm)                    |            |     | N/A  |       |  |
| LAC                                     |          |           | 63333                     |             |            | RSRQ (dBm)                    |            |     | N/A  |       |  |
| Current Technology                      |          |           | HSPA+                     |             |            | Connection Duration           |            |     | 19 hour 51 min 3 sec   |       |  |
| Available Technology                    |          |           | UMTS, HSDPA, HSUPA, HSPA+ |             |            | WAN IP Address                |            |     | 74.198.186.197   |       |  |
|   |          |           |                           |             |            | DNS Server 1                  |            |     | 64.71.255.205  |       |  |
|   |          |           |                           |             |            | DNS Server 2                  |            |     | 64.71.255.253  |       |  |
| Received Packet Statistics              |          |           |                           |             |            | Transmitted Packet Statistics |            |     |  |       |  |
| Receive bytes                           |          |           | 1.175MB                   |             |            | Transmit bytes                |            |     | 699.727KB  |       |  |
| Receive packets                         |          |           | 4778                      |             |            | Transmit packets              |            |     | 5046   |       |  |
| Receive errors                          |          |           | 0                         |             |            | Transmit errors               |            |     | 0  |       |  |
| Drop packets                            |          |           | 0                         |             |            | Drop packets                  |            |     | 0  |       |  |
| <div>Stop Refreshing</div> Interval: 20 |          |           |                           |             |            |                               |            |     |  |       |  |

Image 4-3-1: Carrier > Status

Not all statistics parameters displayed are applicable.

The Received and Transmitted bytes and packets indicate the respective amount of data which has been moved through the radio.

The Error counts reflect those having occurred on the wireless link.



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.2 Carrier > Settings

The parameters within the Carrier Configuration menu must be input properly; they are the most basic requirement required by your cellular provider for network connectivity.



For best practices and to control data usage it is critical that the firewall be configured properly.

It is recommended to block all incoming 4G/Cellular traffic and create rules to open specific ports and/or use ACL lists to limit incoming connections.

| System | Network  | Carrier   | Wireless         | Comport     | I/O        | GPS | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--------|----------|-----------|------------------|-------------|------------|-----|------------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status | Settings | Keelalive | Traffic Watchdog | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS | Data Usage |     |          |       |

**Carrier Configuration**

**Configuration**

|                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| Carrier status              | Enable ▾        |
| Data Roaming                | Disable ▾       |
| Carriers                    | Auto ▾          |
| IP-Passthrough              | Disable ▾       |
| DNS-Passthrough             | Disable ▾       |
| APN                         | staticip.apn    |
| SIM Pin                     |                 |
| Technologies Type           | ALL ▾           |
| Technologies Mode           | AUTO ▾          |
| Data Call Parameters        |                 |
| Primary DNS Address         |                 |
| Secondary DNS Address       |                 |
| Primary NetBIOS Name Server |                 |
| Secondary NetBIOS Server    |                 |
| IP Address                  |                 |
| Authentication              | Device decide ▾ |
| User Name                   |                 |
| Password                    |                 |

Image 4-3-2: Carrier > Settings

#### Carrier Status

Carrier Status is used to Enable or Disable the connection to the Cellular Carrier. By default this option is enabled. If disabled the cellular module is disabled and the modem will not even attempt to connect to the cellular carrier.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable  
Disable



Enabling Data Roaming may result in increased data charges from the Carrier. In some cases this could be an excessive, and unexpected amount. It is important to understand the data plan with the Cellular Carrier.

#### Data Roaming

Enable or disable Data Roaming. If enabled the modem will be allowed to roam on another carriers' network if their home carrier is not available. In most cases the data roaming usage data charges are much higher than home service areas. Roaming is Disabled by default.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable  
Disable

## 4.0 Configuration

### Carriers

In some cases, a user may want to lock onto certain carrier to avoid data roaming. There were four options presented to a user to choose from, Auto, SIM based, Scan & Select and Fixed.

- Auto will allow the VIP4G to pick the carrier automatically. Data roaming is permitted.
- SIM based will only allow the VIP4G to connect to the network indicated by the SIM card used in the unit.
- Manual will scan for available carriers and allow a user to select from the available carriers. It takes 2 to 3 minutes to complete a scan.
- Fixed allows a user to enter the carrier code (numerical) directly and then the VIP4G will only connect to that carrier.

#### Values (Selection)

##### Auto

Based on SIM  
Manual  
Fixed

### IP-Passthrough

IP pass-through allows the 4G WAN IP address to be assigned to the device connected to the physical LAN or WAN Port. In this mode the VIP4G is for the most part transparent and forwards all traffic to the device connected to the specified port except that listed below:

- The WebUI port (*Default Port: TCP 80*), this port is retained for remote management of the VIP4G. This port can be changed to a different port under the **System > Settings** Menu.
- The SNMP Listening Port (*Default Port: UDP 161*).

The connected device must support and be configured for DHCP, or the static WAN IP must be set on the end device.

Local WebUI of the VIP4G is retained by using the first 3 octets of the Wan IP and changing the last octet to 1, so if the assigned WAN IP is A.B.C.D, the local WebUI is available at A.B.C.1.

#### Values (Selection)

##### Disable

Ethernet  
WAN Port

### DNS-Passthrough

When enabled DNS-Passthrough will pass on the WAN assigned DNS information to the end device.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable / **Disable**

### APN (Access Point Name)

The APN is required by every Carrier in order to connect to their networks. The APN defines the type of network the VIP4G is connected to and the service type. Most Carriers have more than one APN, usually many, dependant on the types of service offered.

#### Values (characters)

auto

Auto APN (default) may allow the unit to quickly connect to a carrier, by cycling through a predetermined list of common APN's. Auto APN will not work for private APN's or for all carriers.

### SIM Pin

The SIM Pin is required for some international carriers. If supplied and required by the cellular carrier, enter the SIM Pin here.

#### Values (characters)

(none)

## 4.0 Configuration

| Technologies Type  |   |
|--|---|
| Set to ALL by default, the Technologies field allows the selection of 3GPP technologies (LTE), and or 3GPP2 technology (CDMA).   | <b>Values (Selection)</b><br><b>ALL / 3GPP / 3GPP2</b>                      |
| Technologies Mode  |   |
| The Technologies Mode option allows a user the ability to specify what type of Cellular networks to connect to.  | <b>Values (Selection)</b><br><b>AUTO / LTE Only / WCDMA Only / GSM Only</b> |
| Data Call Parameters   |   |
| Sets the modems connect string if required by the carrier. Not usually required in North America.  | <b>Values (string)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                     |
| Primary DNS Address  |   |
| If let blank the VIP4G with use the DNS server as specified automatically by the service provider.   | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                 |
| Secondary DNS Address  |   |
| If let blank the VIP4G with use the DNS server as specified automatically by the service provider.   | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                 |
| Primary NetBIOS Name Server  |   |
| Enter the Primary NetBIOS Name Server if required by the carrier.  | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                 |
| Secondary NetBIOS Name Server  |   |
| Enter the Secondary NetBIOS Name Server if required by the carrier.  | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                 |
| IP Address   |   |
| In some cases the Static IP address must be entered in this field if assigned by a wireless carrier. In most cases the IP will be read from the SIM card and this field should be left at the default value. | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><i>(none)</i>                                 |

## 4.0 Configuration

### Authentication

Sets the authentication type required to negotiate with peer.

PAP - Password Authentication Protocol.

CHAP - Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.

#### Values (Selection)

**Device decide (AUTO)**

PAP

CHAP

### User Name

A User Name may be required for authentication to a remote peer. Although usually not required for dynamically assigned IP addresses from the wireless carrier, but required in most cases for static IP addresses. Varies by carrier.

#### Values (characters)

Carrier/peer dependant

### Password

Enter the password for the user name above. May not be required by some carriers, or APN's

#### Values (characters)

Carrier/peer dependant

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.3 Carrier > Keepalive

The Keep alive tab allows for the configuration of the keep alive features of the VIP4G. The VIP4G can either do a ICMP or HTTP keep alive by attempting to reach a specified address at a regular interval. If the VIP4G cannot reach the intended destination, it will reset the unit in an attempt to obtain a new connection to the carrier. The Keepalive ensures that there is internet/network connectivity to the address specified at all times. ***If the VIP4G does not have a SIM card installed, is not connected to the Carrier, or is on a private APN, the default keepalive may not work and the unit will reboot at the interval configured.***

| System  | Network  | Carrier   | Wireless         | Comport     | I/O        | GPS | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN | Tool |
|---|----------|-----------|------------------|-------------|------------|-----|------------|-----|----------|------|
| Status  | Settings | Keepalive | Traffic Watchdog | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS | Data Usage |     |          |      |
| <b>Keepalive Configuration</b><br><b>Configuration</b><br>Keep alive status: <input type="text" value="Enable"/><br>Type: <input type="text" value="ICMP"/><br>Host Name: <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/><br>Interval (60 ~ 60000): <input type="text" value="300"/> (s)<br>Count: <input type="text" value="10"/> |          |           |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |      |

Image 4-3-3: Carrier > Keepalive

#### Keep Alive Status

Enable or Disable the keep alive functions in the VIP4G.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable / Disable

#### Type

Select the type of keep alive used. ICMP uses a “ping” to reach a select destination.

#### Values (Selection)

ICMP / HTTP

#### Host Name

Specify a IP Address or Domain that is used to test the VIP4G connection.

#### Values (IP or Domain)

8.8.8.8

#### Interval

The Interval value determines the frequency, or how often, the VIP4G will send out PING messages to the Host.

#### Values (seconds)

300

#### Count

The **Count** field is the maximum number of PING errors such as “Host unreachable” the VIP4G will attempt before the unit will reboot itself to attempt to correct connection issues. If set to zero (0), the unit will never reboot itself.

#### Values (number)

10

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.4 Carrier > Traffic Watchdog

The Wireless Traffic Watchdog will detect if there has been no wireless traffic, or communication with the Cellular carrier for a configurable amount of time. Once that time has elapsed, the unit will reset, and attempt to re-establish communication with the cellular carrier.

| System                                | Network  | Carrier   | Wireless                                      | Comport     | I/O        | GPS | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|---------------------------------------|----------|-----------|---|-------------|------------|-----|------------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status                                | Settings | Keepalive | <b>Traffic Watchdog</b>                       | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS | Data Usage |     |          |       |
| <b>Traffic Watchdog Configuration</b> |          |           |   |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Configuration</b>                  |          |           |   |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Traffic Watchdog                      |          |           | <input type="button" value="Enable"/>         |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Check Interval                        |          |           | <input type="text" value="1"/> (1~60000s)     |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Reboot Time Limit                     |          |           | <input type="text" value="600"/> (300~60000s) |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |

Image 4-3-4: Carrier > Traffic Watchdog

#### Traffic Watchdog

Enable or Disable the Traffic Watchdog.

#### Values (Selection)

**Enable** / Disable

#### Check Interval

The Check Interval tells the VIP4G how often (in seconds) to check for wireless traffic to the cellular carrier. (1-60000 seconds)

#### Values (seconds)

**1**

#### Reboot Time Limit

The Reboot Timer will reset the unit if there has been no Cellular RF activity in the configured time. (300 –60000 seconds)

#### Values (seconds)

**600**



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.5 Carrier > Dynamic DNS

Unless a carrier issues a Static IP address, it may be desirable to use a dynamic DNS service to track dynamic IP changes and automatically update DNS services. This allows the use of a constant resolvable host name for the VIP4G.

| System | Network  | Carrier   | Wireless         | Comport            | I/O        | GPS | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--------|----------|-----------|------------------|--------------------|------------|-----|------------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status | Settings | Keepalive | Traffic Watchdog | <b>Dynamic DNS</b> | SMS Config | SMS | Data Usage |     |          |       |

**Dynamic\_DNS Configuration**

**Configuration**

DDNS status: **Enable** (dropdown)

Service: **changeip** (dropdown)

User Name:

Password:

Host:

Image 4-3-5: Carrier > Traffic Watchdog

#### DDNS Status

This selection allows the use of a Dynamic Domain Name Server (DDNS), for the VIP4G.

#### Values (Selection)

**Enable** / Disable

#### Service

This is a list of supported Dynamic DNS service providers. Free and premium services are offered, contact the specific providers for more information.

#### Values (selection)

|                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| <b>changeip</b> | ods      |
| dyndns          | ovh      |
| euordyndns      | regfish  |
| hn              | tzo      |
| noip            | zoneedit |

#### User Name

Enter a valid user name for the DDNS service selected above.

#### Values (characters)

(none)

#### Password

Enter a valid password for the user name of the DDNS service selected above.

#### Values (characters)

(none)

#### Host

This is the host or domain name for the VIP4G as assigned by the DDNS provider.

#### Values (domain name)

(none)

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.6 Carrier > SMS Config

SMS messages can be used to remotely reboot or trigger events in the VIP4G. SMS alerts can be set up to get SMS messages based on system events such as Roaming status, RSSI, Ethernet Link Status or IO Status.

#### System SMS Command

Image 4-3-6: SMS > SMS Configuration

#### Status

This option allows a user to enable or disable to use of the following SMS commands to reboot or trigger events in the VIP4G:

#### Values (Selection)

Enable / Disable

MSC#REBOOT Reboot system  
 MSC#NMS Send NMS UDP Report  
 MSC#WEB Send web client inquiry  
 MSC#MIOP1 open I/O output1  
 MSC#MIOP2 open I/O output2  
 MSC#MIOP3 open I/O output3  
 MSC#MIOP4 open I/O output4  
 MSC#MIOC1 close I/O output1  
 MSC#MIOC2 close I/O output2  
 MSC#MIOC3 close I/O output3  
 MSC#MIOC4 close I/O output4

MSC#EURD0 trigger event report0  
 MSC#EURD1 trigger event report1  
 MSC#EURD2 trigger event report2  
 MSC#EURD3 trigger event report3  
 MSC#GPSR0 trigger gps report0  
 MSC#GPSR1 trigger gps report1  
 MSC#GPSR2 trigger gps report2  
 MSC#GPSR3 trigger gps report3

**SMS Commands are case sensitive.**

#### Set Phone Filter

If enabled, the VIP4G will only accept and execute commands originating from the phone numbers in the Phone Filter List. Up to 6 numbers can be added.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable / **Disable**

## 4.0 Configuration

### System SMS Alerts

System SMS Alert:

**Status**

**Received Phone Numbers:**

Phone No.1

Phone No.2

Phone No.3

Phone No.4

Phone No.5

Phone No.6

**Alert Condition Settings:**

Time Interval(s)  [5~65535]

RSSI Check

Low Threshold(dBm):  default: -99

Carrier Network

Home/Roaming Status:

Ethernet

Link Status:

IO Status

[View Alert SMS Record](#)

Image 4-3-7: SMS > SMS Alerts

#### Status

Enable SMS Alerts. IF enabled SMS alerts will be send when conditions are met as configured to the phone numbers listed.

#### Values (Selection)

Enable / **Disable**

#### Received Phone Numbers

SMS Alerts can be sent to up to 6 different phone numbers that are listed here.

#### Values (Selection)

(no default)

#### Time Interval(s)

SMS alerts, when active, will be sent out at the frequency defined here.

#### Values (Seconds)

300

#### RSSI Check

Enable or disable the RSSI alerts. If enable, enter the low RSSI threshold.

#### Values (Selection)

Disable RSSI check  
Enable RSSI check

## 4.0 Configuration

### RSSI Check

Set the threshold for RSSI alerts.

#### Values (dBm)

-99

### Carrier Network

Enable or disable SMS Alerts for Roaming Status.

#### Values (Selection)

Disable Roaming Check  
Enable Roaming Check

### Home / Roaming Status

The VIP4G can send alerts based on the roaming status. Data rates during roaming can be expensive and it is important to know when a device has started roaming.

#### Values (Selection)

In Roaming  
Changed or In Roaming  
Changed to Roaming

### Ethernet

Enable or disable SMS Alerts for the Ethernet Link status of the LAN RJ45 port.

#### Values (Selection)

Disable Ethernet check  
Enable Ethernet check

### Ethernet Link Status

The status of the Ethernet Link of the LAN (RJ45) can be used to send SMS Alerts. The link status may indicate an issue with the connected device.

#### Values (Selection)

Changed  
In no-link  
Changed or in no-link  
Changed to no-link

### I/O Status

SMS Alerts can be sent based on the state changes of the Digital I/O lines.

#### Values (Selection)

Disable IO Check  
Enable: INPUT Changed  
Enable: Output Changed  
Enable: INPUT or OUTPUT  
Changed.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.7 Carrier > SMS

#### SMS Command History

The SMS menu allows a user to view the SMS Command History and view the SMS messages on the SIM Card.

| From         | Send Time                       | Content    | Result  |
|--------------|---------------------------------|------------|---|
| +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 10:58:44 -0600 (MDT) | MSC#REBOOT | Run:reboot @Wed Mar 26 10:58:46 2014          |
| +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:02:58 -0600 (MDT) | MSC#NMS    | Send NMS report @Wed Mar 26 11:03:06 2014     |
| +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:06:18 -0600 (MDT) | MSC#MIOC1  | Set output 1 closed @Wed Mar 26 11:06:24 2014 |
| +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:09:52 -0600 (MDT) | MSC#REBOOT | Run:reboot @Wed Mar 26 11:09:56 2014          |

| No. | From         | Time                            | Content  |
|-----|--------------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1   | +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:04:03 -0600 (MDT) | Test Message #2 <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Reply</a>                 |
| 2   | +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:04:41 -0600 (MDT) | Test Message - Tech onsite 3/25 <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Reply</a> |
| 3   | +14036129217 | 26/03/2014 11:00:27 -0600 (MDT) | Test Message #1 <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Reply</a>                 |

[Delete All Above SMS](#) [Send New SMS](#)

Image 4-3-8: SMS > SMS Command History

#### Send SMS Message

The SMS messages can be sent directly from the VIP4G WebUI interface. Also, the SMS message history can be viewed.

| Send To      | Send Time                | Content                 | Result           |
|--------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| +14036129217 | Wed Mar 26 14:19:55 2014 | Test Message from VIP4G | Succeed to send. |

Image 4-3-9: SMS > SMS Send



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.3.8 Carrier > Data Usage

The Data Usage tool on the VIP4G allows users to monitor the amount of cellular data consumed. Since cellular devices are generally billed based on the amount of data used, alerts can be triggered by setting daily and/or monthly limits. Notifications can be sent using SMS or Email, allowing a early warning if configurable limits are about to be exceeded. The usage data reported by the Data Usage Monitor may not precisely match the data reported by the carrier, but it gives the users an idea of the bandwidth consumed by the VIP4G.



Set up appropriate firewall rules to block unwanted data which may result in excessive data charges.

| System  | Network  | Carrier  | Wireless         | Comport     | I/O        | GPS | Firewall   | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|---|----------|--|------------------|-------------|------------|-----|------------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status  | Settings | Keepalive  | Traffic Watchdog | Dynamic DNS | SMS Config | SMS | Data Usage |     |          |       |
| <b>Data Usage Monitor</b>   |          |  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Data Usage Statistic</b>   |          |  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Today's Usage:  |          | 12.532 MB  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Yesterday's Usage:  |          | 0 Bytes  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Current Monthly Usage:  |          | 105.805 MB   |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Last Monthly Usage:   |          | 0 Bytes  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Reset and Clear all Record:   |          | <input type="button" value="Reset Record To Zero"/>        |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Attention: Data usage statistic is not exact same to your carrier's caculation on your monthly bill with different systems. |          |  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Data Usage Monitor</b>   |          |  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Status</b>   |          | <input type="button" value="Enable Data Usage Monitor"/>   |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Last Config Time  |          | Thu Jun 20 12:02:47 MDT 2013                               |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Monthly Over Limit</b>   |          | <input type="button" value="Send Notice SMS"/>             |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Monthly Data Units  |          | <input type="button" value="M Bytes"/>                     |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Data Limit  |          | <input type="text" value="500"/> [1~65535]                 |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Period Start Day  |          | <input type="text" value="1"/> [1~31](day of month)        |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Phone Number  |          | <input type="text" value="+1403"/>                         |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| <b>Daily Over Limit</b>   |          | <input type="button" value="Send Notice Email"/>           |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Daily Data Units  |          | <input type="button" value="M Bytes"/>                     |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Data Limit  |          | <input type="text" value="50"/> [1~65535]                  |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Mail Subject  |          | <input type="text" value="Monthly Data Usage Notic"/>      |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Mail Server(IP/Name)  |          | <input type="text" value="smtp.gmail.com:465"/> (xxx:port) |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| User Name   |          | <input type="text" value="@gmail.com"/>                    |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Password  |          | <input type="text" value="..."/>                           |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |
| Mail Recipient  |          | <input type="text" value="host@"/> (xx@xx.xx)              |                  |             |            |     |            |     |          |       |

Image 4-3-10: Carrier > Data Usage

#### Status

If enabled the VIP4G will track the amount of cellular data consumed. If disabled, data is not recorded, even in the Current Data Usage display.

#### Values (selection)

Disable  
Enable



## 4.0 Configuration

### Monthly/Daily Over Limit

Select the notification method used to send alerts when daily or monthly thresholds are exceeded. If none is selected, notifications will not be sent, but data usage will be recorded for reference purposes.

#### Values (selection)

**None**  
Send Notice SMS  
Send Notice Email

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Monthly Over Limit | Send Notice SMS        |
| Monthly Data Units | M Bytes                |
| Data Limit         | 500 [1~65535]          |
| Period Start Day   | 1 [1~31](day of month) |
| Phone Number       | +1                     |

Image 4-3-11: Data Usage > SMS Config

### Monthly/Daily Data Unit

Select the data unit to be used for data usage monitoring.

#### Values (selection)

Bytes / K Bytes / **M Bytes**  
G Bytes

### Data Limit

Select the data limit for the day or month, used in connection with the data unit is the previous field. If you want to set the limit to 250 Mbytes, select M Bytes for the data unit, and 250 for the data limit.

#### Values (1-65535)

**500**

### Period Start Day

For Monthly tracking, select the day the billing/data cycles begins. On this day each month the VIP4G will reset the data usage monitor numbers.

#### Values (1-31)

**1 (Day of Month)**

### Phone Number

If SMS is selected as the notification method, enter the phone number to send any SMS messages generated when the data usage exceeds the configured limits.

#### Values (phone)

**+1403**

|                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Daily Over Limit     | Send Notice Email             |
| Daily Data Units     | M Bytes                       |
| Data Limit           | 50 [1~65535]                  |
| Mail Subject         | Monthly Data Usage Notic      |
| Mail Server(IP/Name) | smtp.gmail.com:465 (xxx:port) |
| User Name            | mhscell@gmail.com             |
| Password             | ***                           |
| Mail Recipient       | host@ (xx@xx.xx)              |

Image 4-3-12: Data Usage > Email Config

## 4.0 Configuration

### Mail Subject

If Email is selected as the notification method, enter the desired email subject line for the notification email sent when daily and/or monthly usage limits are exceeded.

#### Values (string)

Daily/Monthly Data Usage Notice

### Mail Server(IP/Name)

If Email is selected as the notification method, enter the SMTP server details for the account used to send the Email notifications. Domain or IP address with the associated port as shown.

#### Values (xxx:port)

smtp.gmail.com:465

### Username

If Email is selected as the notification method, enter the username of the Email account used to send Emails.

#### Values (username)

@gmail.com

### Password

If Email is selected as the notification method, enter the password of the Email account used to send Emails. Most email servers require authentication on outgoing emails.

#### Values (string)

\*\*\*

### Mail Recipient

Enter the email address of the individual or distribution list to send the email notification to.

#### Values (xx@xx.xx)

host@

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.4 Wireless (WiFi)

#### 4.4.1 Wireless > Status

The Status window gives a summary of all radio or wireless related settings and connections.

The **General Status** section shows the Wireless MAC address of the current radio, the Operating Mode (Access Point, Client, MESH etc), the SSID being used, frequency channel information and the type of security used.

**Traffic Status** shows statistics about the transmitted and received data.

The VIP4G shows information about all Wireless connections in the **Connection Status** section. The Wireless MAC address, Noise Floor, Signal to Noise ratio (SNR), Signal Strength (RSSI), The transmit and receive Client Connection Quality (CCQ), TX and RX data rates, and a graphical representation of the signal level or quality.

The screenshot displays the 'Status' window for the microhard SYSTEMS INC. VIP4G device. The 'Wireless' tab is selected, and the 'Radio1' sub-tab is active. The 'Radio 1 Status' section is expanded, showing three sub-sections: 'General Status', 'Traffic Status', and 'Connection Status'.

**General Status**

| MAC Address       | Mode         | SSID   | Frequency Band | Radio Frequency | Security mode |
|-------------------|--------------|--------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 00:80:48:79:8E:46 | Access Point | MHSMKT | Dual-Band Mode | 2.462           | WPA+WPA2(PSK) |

**Traffic Status**

| Receive bytes | Receive packets | Transmit bytes | Transmit packets |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 63.883KB      | 558             | 209.343KB      | 2466             |

**Connection Status**

| MAC Address       | Noise Floor (dBm) | SNR (dB) | RSSI (dBm) | TX CCQ (%) | RX CCQ (%) | TX Rate     | RX Rate     | Signal Level |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 98:03:d8:c5:52:18 | -93               | 68       | -27        | 86         | 95         | 65.0 MBit/s | 65.0 MBit/s | 100%         |
| 48:5d:60:98:8c:94 | -93               | 60       | -35        | 87         | 96         | 54.0 MBit/s | 54.0 MBit/s | 100%         |

Stop Refreshing Interval: 20(s)

Image 4-4-1: Wireless > Status

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.4.2 Wireless > Radio1

#### Radio1 Phy Configuration

The top section of the Wireless Configuration allows for the configuration of the physical radio module. You can turn the radio on or off, and select the channel bandwidth and frequency as seen below.

The screenshot shows the 'Wireless' tab selected in the configuration menu. Under 'Radio1', the 'Radio' is set to 'On'. The 'Mode' is '802.11NG - High Throughput on 2.4GHz'. The 'High Throughput Mode' is 'HT20'. 'Advanced Capabilities' is set to 'Show'. The 'Channel-Frequency' is '11 - 2.462 GHz'. 'Wireless Distance' is '10000 (m)'. 'RTS Thr (256~2346)' is 'OFF'. 'Fragment Thr (256~2346)' is 'OFF'. There is a link 'Add Virtual Interface'.

Image 4-4-2: Wireless > Radio Configuration

#### Radio

This option is used to turn the radio module on or off. If turned off Wireless connections can not be made. The default is On.

#### Values (selection)

On / Off

#### Mode

The Mode defines which wireless standard to use for the wireless network. The VIP4G supports all 802.11a/b/g/n modes as seen here. Select the appropriate operating mode from the list.

The options below are dependant and vary on the operating mode chosen here.

#### Values (selection)

802.11B ONLY  
802.11BG  
802.11NG-High Throughout 2.4GHz  
802.11A ONLY  
802.11NA-High Throughout 5GHz

#### Channel Bandwidth

Only appears when using 802.11b, bg or a modes. Lower channel bandwidths may provide longer range and be less susceptible to noise but at the trade off of data rates. Higher channel bandwidth may provide greater data rates but will be more susceptible to noise and shorter distance potentials.

#### Values (selection)

20MHz Normal Rate

## 4.0 Configuration

### High Throughput Mode

Select HT20 for a 20MHz channel, or HT40 for a 40 MHz Channel. The 40MHz channel is comprised of 2 adjacent 20MHz channels and the + and—designate to use the higher or lower of the adjacent channels.

#### Values (selection)

HT20  
HT40-  
HT40+

### Advanced Capabilities (Only shown if box is checked)

**MPDU Aggregation** (Enable/Disable) - Allows multiple data frames to be sent in a single transmission block, allowing for acknowledging or retransmitting if errors occur.

**Short GI** (Enable/Disable) - GI (guard interval) is the time the receiver waits for any RF reflections to settle before sampling data. Enabling a short GI (400ns) can increase throughput, but can also increase the error rate in some installations.

HT Capabilities Info - TX-STBC RX-STBC1 DSSS\_CCK-40  
Maximum AMSDU (byte) - 3839  
Maximum AMPDU (byte) - 65535

### Channel-Freq

The Channel-Freq setting allows configuration of which channel to operate on, auto can be chosen where the unit will automatically pick a channel to operate. If a link cannot be established it will try another channel.

#### 2.4 GHz Channels

##### Auto

Channel 01 : 2.412 GHz  
Channel 02 : 2.417 GHz  
Channel 03 : 2.422 GHz  
Channel 04 : 2.427 GHz  
Channel 05 : 2.432 GHz  
Channel 06 : 2.437 GHz  
Channel 07 : 2.442 GHz  
Channel 08 : 2.447 GHz  
Channel 09 : 2.452 GHz  
Channel 10 : 2.457 GHz  
Channel 11 : 2.462 GHz

#### 5 GH Channels

##### Auto

Channel 36: 5.18 GHz  
Channel 40: 5.2 GHz  
Channel 44: 5.22 GHz  
Channel 48: 5.24 GHz  
Channel 149 : 5.745 GHz  
Channel 153 : 5.765 GHz  
Channel 157 : 5.785 GHz  
Channel 161 : 5.805 GHz  
Channel 165 : 5.825 GHz

### Wireless Distance

The Wireless Distance parameter allows a user to set the expected distance the WiFi signal needs to travel. The default is 10km, so the VIP4G will assume that the signal may need to travel up to 10km so it sets various internal timeouts to account for this travel time. Longer distances will require a higher setting, and shorter distances may perform better if the setting is reduced.

#### Values (meters)

10000

## 4.0 Configuration

### RTS Thr (256 ~ 2346)

Once the RTS Threshold defined packet size is reached, the system will invoke RTS/CTS flow control. A large RTS Threshold will improve bandwidth, while a smaller RTS Threshold will help the system recover from interference or collisions caused by obstructions.

#### Values (selection)

On / **OFF**

### Fragment Thr (256 ~ 2346)

The Fragmentation Threshold allows the system to change the maximum RF packet size. Increasing the RF packet size reduces the need to break packets into smaller fragments. Increasing the fragmentation threshold slightly may improve performance if a high packet error rate is experienced.

#### Values (selection)

On / **OFF**

### Radio1 Virtual Interface

The bottom section of the Wireless Configuration provides for the configuration of the Operating Mode of the Wireless Interface, the TX power, Wireless Network information, and Wireless Encryption. The VIP4G can support multiple virtual interfaces. These interfaces provide different SSID's for different users, and can also be assigned to separate subnets (Network Interfaces) to prevent groups from interacting.

Radio1 Virtual Interface

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Network         | LAN   |
| Mode            | Access Point  |
| TX bitrate      | Auto  |
| Tx Power        | 17 dbm  |
| WDS             | <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| ESSID Broadcast | <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| AP Isolation    | <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off |
| SSID            | MyNetwork   |
| Encryption Type | WPA+WPA2 (PSK)  |
| WPA PSK         | ••••••••  |
| Show password   | <input type="checkbox"/>                                      |

Image 4-4-3: Wireless > Radio Configuration

### Network

Choose between LAN or WAN for the Virtual Interface. If additional **Network Interfaces** have been defined in the Network > LAN section, the Interface name will also appear here.

#### Values (selection)

LAN  
WAN  
(Additional Interfaces...)



## 4.0 Configuration

| Mode  |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Access Point</b> - An Access Point may provide a wireless data connection to many clients, such as stations, repeaters, or other supported wireless devices such as laptops etc.</p> <p>If more than 1 Virtual Interface (more than 1 SSID) has been defined, the VIP4G can <b>ONLY</b> operate as a Access Point, and will be locked into this mode.</p> <p><b>Station/Client</b> - A Station may sustain one wireless connection, i.e. to an Access Point.</p> <p><b>Repeater</b> - A Repeater can be connected to an Access Point to extend the range and provide a wireless data connection to many clients, such as stations.</p> <p><b>Mesh Point</b> - Units can be configured as a Mesh "Node". When multiple units are configured as a Mesh node, they automatically establish a network between each other. SSID for each radio in a Mesh network must be the same.</p> | <p><b>Values (selection)</b></p> <p>Access Point<br/> <b>Client</b><br/> Repeater<br/> Mesh Point</p>                      |
| TX Rate   |  |
| <p>This setting determines the rate at which the data is to be wirelessly transferred.</p> <p>The default is 'Auto' and, in this configuration, the unit will transfer data at the highest possible rate in consideration of the receive signal strength (RSSI).</p> <p>Setting a specific value of transmission rate has the benefit of 'predictability' of that rate, but if the RSSI drops below the required minimum level to support that rate, communications will fail.</p>  |  |
| 802.11 b/g  | 802.11a  |
| <p><b>Auto</b></p> <p>1 Mbps (802.11b,g)<br/> 2 Mbps (802.11b,g)<br/> 5.5 Mbps (802.11b,g)<br/> 11 Mbps (802.11b,g)<br/> 6 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 9 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 12 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 18 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 24 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 36 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 48 Mbps (802.11g)<br/> 54 Mbps (802.11g)</p>   | <p><b>Auto</b></p> <p>6 Mbps<br/> 9 Mbps<br/> 12 Mbps<br/> 18 Mbps<br/> 24 Mbps<br/> 36 Mbps<br/> 48 Mbps<br/> 54 Mbps</p> |
| 802.11n (HT20/HT40)   |  |
| <p><b>Auto</b></p> <p>mcs-0 (7.2/15) Mbps<br/> mcs-1 (14.4/30.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-2 (21.7/45.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-3 (28.9/60.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-4 (43.3/90.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-5 (57.8/120.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-6 (65.0/135.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-7 (72.2/150.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-8 (14.4/30.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-9 (28.9/60.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-10 (43.3/90.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-11 (57.8/120.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-12 (86.7/180.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-13 (115.6/240.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-14 (130.3/270.0) Mbps<br/> mcs-15 (144.4/300.0) Mbps</p>  |  |

## 4.0 Configuration



Refer to FCC (or as otherwise applicable) regulations to ascertain, and not operate beyond, the maximum allowable transmitter output power and effective isotropic radiated power (EIRP).

This setting establishes the transmit power level which will be presented to the antenna connectors at the rear of the VIP4G. Unless required, the Tx Power should be set not for maximum, but rather for the minimum value required to maintain an adequate system fade margin.

### TX Power

#### Values (selection)

|               |        |
|---------------|--------|
| 11 dBm        | 21 dBm |
| 12 dBm        | 22 dBm |
| 13 dBm        | 23 dBm |
| 14 dBm        | 24 dBm |
| 15 dBm        | 25 dBm |
| 16 dBm        | 26 dBm |
| <b>17 dBm</b> | 27 dBm |
| 18 dBm        | 28 dBm |
| 19 dBm        | 29 dBm |
| 20 dBm        | 30 dBm |



SSID: Service Set Identifier. The 'name' of a wireless network. In an open wireless network, the SSID is broadcast; in a closed system it is not. The SSID must be known by a potential client for it to be able to access the wireless network.

Wireless distribution system (WDS) is a system enabling the wireless interconnection of access points. WDS preserves the MAC addresses of client frames across links between access points

### WDS

#### Values (selection)

On / Off

### ESSID Broadcast

Disabling the SSID broadcast helps secure the wireless network. Enabling the broadcast of the SSID (Network Name) will permit others to 'see' the wireless network and perhaps attempt to 'join' it.

#### Values (selection)

On / Off

### AP Isolation

When AP Isolation is enabled wireless devices connected to this SSID will not be able to communicate with each other. In other words if the VIP4G is being used as a Hot Spot for many wireless clients, AP Isolation would provide security for those clients by not allowing access to any other wireless device.

#### Values (selection)

On / Off



Change the default value for the Network Name to something unique for your network. Do this for an added measure of security and to differentiate your network from others which may be operating nearby.

All devices connecting to the VIP4G in a given network must use the SSID of the VIP4G. This unique network address is not only a security feature for a particular network, but also allows other networks - with their own unique network address - to operate in the same area without the possibility of undesired data exchange between networks.

### SSID

#### Values (string)

wlan0

### MESH ID

In Mesh Networks, this must be the same for all VIP4G, or VIP Series units participating, similar to the SSID for other wireless networks.

#### Values (string)

(no default)

## 4.0 Configuration



WEP: Wired Equivalency Privacy is a security protocol defined in 802.11b. It is commonly available for Wi-Fi networks and was intended to offer the equivalent security of a wired network, however, it has been found to be not as secure as desired.

Operating at the data link and physical layers, WEP does not provide complete end-to-end security.

Security options are dependent on the version type. This section describes all available options. Export versions may not have all optional available to meet regulatory requirements set government policies.

**WEP:** Wired Equivalency Protocol (WEP) encryption adds some overhead to the data, thereby negatively affecting throughput to some degree.

The image below shows the associated configuration options:

Image 4-4-4: Encryption Type > WEP

- **Key Generation**  
4 complex WEP keys may be generated based on the supplied Passphrase

**Procedure:** Input a Key Phrase, select the type of Key to be generated using the Generate Key soft button.

Using the same Passphrase on all VIP4G/VIP Series units within the network will generate the same Keys on all units. All units must operate with the same Key selected.

Alternately, key phrases may be entered manually into each Key field.

**WPA:** Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2). It provides stronger security than WEP does. The configuration is essentially the same as for WEP (described above), without the option for automatic Key generation.

### Show Password

Check this box to show the currently configured password for WPA/WPA2 encryption passphrase.

### Values (selection)

unchecked

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.5 Comport

#### 4.5.1 Comport > Status

The Status window gives a summary of the Serial port on the VIP4G. The Status window shows if the comport has been enabled, how it is configured (Connect As), and the connection status.

Also shown is statistical information about the serial port, including the number of transmitted and received packets and bytes. This can be used to diagnose connection and data usage issues.

| System          | Network | Carrier         | Wireless | Comport        | I/O | GPS              | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|----------|----------------|-----|------------------|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status Settings |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |
| Comport Status  |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |
| Port Status     |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |
| General Status  |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |
| Port Status     |         | Baud Rate       |          | Connect As     |     | Connect Status   |          |     |          |       |
| Enable          |         | 115200          |          | TCP Server     |     | Active (1)       |          |     |          |       |
| Traffic Status  |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |
| Receive bytes   |         | Receive packets |          | Transmit bytes |     | Transmit packets |          |     |          |       |
| 2088            |         | 207             |          | 0              |     | 0                |          |     |          |       |
| Stop Refreshing |         |                 |          |                |     |                  |          |     |          |       |

Image 4-5-1: Comport > Comport Status

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.5.2 Comport > Settings

This menu option is used to configure the serial device server for the serial communications port. Serial device data may be brought into the IP network through TCP, UDP, or multicast; it may also exit the VIP4G network on another VIP4G serial port. The fully-featured RS232 interface supports hardware handshaking.

Basic configuration of the serial port would be to first, set the appropriate interface connection settings such as the baud rate and data format. Next, it is critical to define the IP Protocol Config, since all serial data entering the VIP4G is essentially converted to IP, to either TCP, or UDP packets. The following section describes the configuration of the serial port.

The screenshot displays the 'Comport Configuration' page of the microhard SYSTEMS INC. VIP4G web interface. The page has a navigation bar with tabs for System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. Below the navigation bar is a 'Status Settings' section. The main content area is titled 'Comport Configuration' and contains two sub-sections: 'Comport Configuration' and 'TCP Configuration'.

**Comport Configuration**

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Com Port status      | Enable  |
| Channel Mode         | RS232   |
| Data Baud Rate       | 9600  |
| Data Format          | 8N1   |
| Flow Control         | none  |
| Pre-Data Delay (ms)  | 100   |
| Post-Data Delay (ms) | 100   |
| Data Mode            | <input type="radio"/> Seamless <input checked="" type="radio"/> Transparent                     |
| Character Timeout    | 0   |
| Maximum Packet Size  | 1024  |
| Priority             | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Medium <input type="radio"/> High |
| No-Connection Data   | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable                           |
| TCP MODBUS Status    | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable                           |
| IP Protocol Config   | TCP Server  |

**TCP Configuration**

|                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Local Listening port        | 20001 |
| Incoming Connection Timeout | 300   |

Image 4-5-2: Comport > Settings Configuration

## 4.0 Configuration

### Com Port Status

Select operational status of the Serial Port. The port is disabled by default, to allow the port to be used for console and AT command operations. If it is required to connect to a serial based device, the port first must be enabled.

#### Values (selection)

**Disabled** / Enable

### Channel Mode

Determines which serial interface shall be used to connect to external devices: RS232, RS485, or RS422. When an interface other than RS232 is selected, the DE9 port will be inactive.

#### Values (selection)

**RS232** / RS485 / RS422

### Data Baud Rate

The serial baud rate is the rate at which the modem is to communicate with the attached local asynchronous device.

#### Values (bps)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| 921600 | <b>9600</b> |
| 460800 | 7200        |
| 230400 | 4800        |
| 115200 | 3600        |
| 57600  | 2400        |
| 38400  | 1200        |
| 28800  | 600         |
| 19200  | 300         |
| 14400  |             |



Note: Most PCs do not readily support serial communications greater than 115200bps.

### Data Format

This setting determines the format of the data on the serial port. The default is 8 data bits, No parity, and 1 Stop bit.

#### Values (selection)

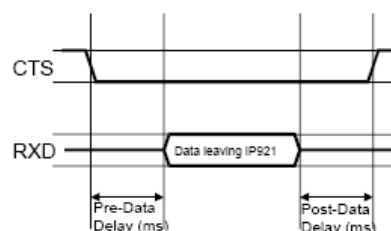
|            |     |
|------------|-----|
| <b>8N1</b> | 7N2 |
| 8N2        | 7E1 |
| 8E1        | 7O1 |
| 8O1        | 7E2 |
| 7N1        | 7O2 |



Software flow control (XON/XOFF) is not supported.

### Flow Control

Flow control may be used to enhance the reliability of serial data communications, particularly at higher baud rates. If the attached device does not support hardware handshaking, leave this setting at the default value of 'None'. When CTS Framing is selected, the VIP4G uses the CTS signal to gate the output data on the serial port.



Drawing 4A: CTS Output Data Framing

#### Values (selection)

**None**  
Hardware  
CTS Framing



## 4.0 Configuration

### Pre-Data Delay

Refer to **Drawing 4A** on the preceding page.

Values (time (ms) )

100

### Post-Data Delay

Refer to **Drawing 4A** on the preceding page.

Values (time (ms) )

100

### Date Mode

This setting defines the serial output data framing. In Transparent mode (default), the received data will be output promptly from the VIP4G.

Values (selection)

Seamless / **Transparent**

When set to Seamless, the serial port server will add a gap between data frames to comply with the MODBUS protocol for example. See 'Character Timeout' below for related information.

### Character Timeout

In Seamless mode (see Data Mode described on the preceding page), this setting determines when the serial server will consider the recently-received incoming data as being ready to transmit. As per the MODBUS standard, frames will be marked as 'bad' if the time gap between frames is greater than 1.5 characters, but less than the Character Timeout value.

Values (characters)

0

The serial server also uses this parameter to determine the time gap inserted between frames. It is measured in 'characters' and related to baud rate.

Example: If the baud rate is 9600bps, it takes approximately 1ms to move one character. With the Character Timeout set to 4, the timeout period is 4ms. When the calculated time is less than 3.5ms, the serial server will set the character timeout to a minimum value of 3.5ms.

If the baud rate is greater than 19200bps, the minimum character timeout is internally set to 750us (microseconds).

### Maximum Packet Size

Defines the buffer size that the serial server will use to receive data from the serial port. When the server detects that the Character Timeout criteria has been met, or the buffer is full, it packetizes the received frame and transmits it.

Values (bytes)

1024

### Priority

This setting effects the quality of service associated with the data traffic on the COM port.

Values (selection)

**Normal** / Medium / High

## 4.0 Configuration

### No-Connection Data

When enabled the data will continue to buffer received on the serial data port when the radio loses synchronization. When disabled the VIP4G will disregard any data received on the serial data port when radio synchronization is lost.

Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

### MODBUS TCP Status

This option will enable or disable the MODBUS decoding and encoding features.

Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

### MODBUS TCP Protection

The field allows the MODBUS TCP Protection Status flag to be enabled or disabled. If enabled the MODBUS data will be encrypted with the MODBUS Protection Key.

Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

### MODBUS TCP Protection Key

MODBUS encryption key used for the MODBUS TCP Protection Status feature.

Values (string)

1234

## 4.0 Configuration



The protocol selected in the IP Protocol Config field will determine which configuration options appear in the remainder of the COM1 Configuration Menu.



UDP: User Datagram Protocol does not provide sequencing information for the packets sent nor does it establish a 'connection' ('handshaking') and is therefore most suited to communicating small packets of data.



TCP: Transmission Control Protocol in contrast to UDP does provide sequencing information and is connection-oriented; a more reliable protocol, particularly when large amounts of data are being communicated.

Requires more bandwidth than UDP.

This setting determines which protocol the serial server will use to transmit serial port data over the VIP4G network.

The protocol selected in the IP Protocol Config field will determine which configuration options appear in the remainder of the COM1 Configuration Menu.

The serial port will not work unless the IP Protocol Config has been configured properly. Once serial data is collected at the serial port, the modem must be told how to deal with it, and where to send it.

### IP Protocol Config

#### Values (selection)

TCP Client  
 TCP Server  
 TCP Client/Server  
 UDP Point-to-Point  
 UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P)  
**UDP Point-to-Multipoint(MP)**  
 UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint  
 SMTP Client  
 SMS Transparent Mode  
 GPS Transparent Mode

**TCP Client:** When TCP Client is selected and data is received on its serial port, the VIP4G takes the initiative to find and connect to a remote TCP server. The TCP session is terminated by this same unit when the data exchange session is completed and the connection timeout has expired. If a TCP connection cannot be established, the serial port data is discarded.

- **Remote Server Address**  
 IP address of a TCP server which is ready to accept serial port data through a TCP connection. For example, this server may reside on a LAN network server.  
 Default: **0.0.0.0**
- **Remote Server Port**  
 A TCP port which the remote server listens to, awaiting a session connection request from the TCP Client. Once the session is established, the serial port data is communicated from the Client to the Server.  
 Default: **20001**
- **Outgoing Connection Timeout**  
 This parameter determines when the VIP4G will terminate the TCP connection if the connection is in an idle state (i.e. no data traffic on the serial port).  
 Default: **60** (seconds)

**TCP Server:** In this mode, the VIP4G Series will not INITIATE a session, rather, it will wait for a Client to request a session of it (it's being the Server—it 'serves' a Client). The unit will 'listen' on a specific TCP port. If a session is established, data will flow from the Client to the Server, and, if present, from the Server to the Client. If a session is not established, both Client-side serial data, and Server-side serial data, if present, will be discarded.

- **Local Listening Port**  
 The TCP port which the Server listens to. It allows a TCP connection to be created by a TCP Client to carry serial port data.  
 Default: **20001**
- **Incoming Connection Timeout**  
 Established when the TCP Server will terminate the TCP connection if the connection is in an idle state.  
 Default: **300** (seconds)

## 4.0 Configuration



A UDP or TCP port is an application end-point. The IP address identifies the device and, as an extension of the IP address, the port essentially 'fine tunes' where the data is to go 'within the device'.

Be careful to select a port number that is not predetermined to be associated with another application type, e.g. HTTP uses port 80.



Multicast is a one-to-many transmission of data over an IP network. It is an efficient method of transmitting the same data to many recipients. The recipients must be members of the specific multicast group.



**TTL:** Time to Live is the number of hops a packet can travel before being discarded.

In the context of multicast, a TTL value of 1 restricts the range of the packet to the same subnet.

### IP Protocol Config (Continued...)

**TCP Client/Server:** In this mode, the VIP4G will be a combined TCP Client and Server, meaning that it can both initiate and serve TCP connection (session) requests. Refer to the TCP Client and TCP Server descriptions and settings described previously as all information, combined, is applicable to this mode.

**UDP Point-to-Point:** In this configuration the VIP4G will send serial data to a specifically-defined point, using UDP packets. This same VIP4G will accept UDP packets from that same point.

- **Remote IP Address**  
IP address of distant device to which UDP packets are sent when data received at serial port.  
Default: **0.0.0.0**
- **Remote Port**  
UDP port of distant device mentioned above.  
Default: **20001**
- **Listening Port**  
UDP port which the IP Series listens to (monitors). UDP packets received on this port are forwarded to the unit's serial port.  
Default: **20001**

**UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P):** This mode is configured on an VIP4G which is to send multicast UDP packets; typically, the Access Point in the VIP4G network.

- **Multicast IP Address**  
A valid multicast address this unit uses to send multicast UDP packets upon receiving data from the serial port. The default value is a good example of a valid multicast address.  
Default: **224.1.1.1**
- **Multicast Port**  
A UDP port that this IP Series will send UDP packets to. The Multipoint (MP - see the UDP Point-to-Multipoint (MP) description) stations should be configured to listen to this point in order to receive multicast packets from this VIP4G unit.  
Default: **20001**
- **Listening Port**  
The UDP port that this unit receives incoming data on from multiple remote units.  
Default: **20011**
- **Time to Live**  
Time to live for the multicast packets.  
Default: **1** (hop)

## 4.0 Configuration

### IP Protocol Config (Continued...)



In a Point-to-Multipoint (PMP) network topology which is to utilize UDP multicast, typically the MASTER would be configured as '(P)' (the POINT) and the REMOTES would be configured as '(MP)' (the MULTIPOINTS).

**UDP Point-to-Multipoint (MP):** This protocol is selected on the units which are to receive multicast UDP packets, typically the Remote units. See the previous description of UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P).

- **Remote IP Address**  
The IP address of a distant device (VIP4G or, for example, a PC) to which the unit sends UDP packets of data received on the serial port. Most often this is the IP address of the Access Point.  
Default: **0.0.0.0**
- **Remote Port**  
The UDP port associated with the Remote IP Address (above). In the case of this 'Remote' being the VIP Series Station, the value in this field should match the Listening Port of the Access Point (see UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P)).  
Default: **20011**
- **Multicast IP Address**  
A valid MULTICAST address that this unit will use to receive multicast UDP packets sent by a UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P) unit. Note that the default value for this field matches the default Multicast IP Address of the UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P) configuration described on the previous page.  
Default: **224.1.1.1**
- **Multicast Port**  
The UDP port that this unit will use, along with the Multicast IP Address detailed above, to receive the multicast UDP packets sent by the UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P) unit.  
Default: **20001**

#### UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint

- **Multicast IP Address**  
A valid multicast address the unit will use to send multicast UDP packets upon receiving them at its serial port.  
Default: **224.1.1.1**
- **Multicast Port**  
UDP port that the packets are sent to. Multipoint stations should be configured to listen to this port in order to receive multicast packets.  
Default: **20011**
- **Time to Live**  
Time to live for the multicast packets.  
Default: **1 (hop)**
- **Listening Multicast IP Address**  
A valid multicast address the unit is to listen to receive multicast UDP packets sent by another UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint unit.  
Default: **224.1.1.1**
- **Listening Multicast Port**  
UDP port that the unit will listen to for multicast UDP packets sent by another UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint unit.  
Default: **20011**

## 4.0 Configuration

### IP Protocol Config (Continued...)

**SMTP Client:** If the VIP4G has Internet access, this protocol may be used to send the data received on the serial port (COM1), in a selectable format (see Transfer Mode (below)), to an e-mail addressee. Both the SMTP Server and the e-mail addressee must be 'reachable' for his feature to function.

- **Mail Subject**  
Enter a suitable 'e-mail subject' (e-mail heading).  
Default: **COM1 Message**
- **Mail Server (IP/Name)**  
IP address or 'Name' of SMTP (Mail) Server.  
Default: **0.0.0.0**
- **Mail Recipient**  
A valid e-mail address for the intended addressee, entered in the proper format.  
Default: **host@**
- **Message Max Size**  
Maximum size for the e-mail message.  
Default: **1024**
- **Timeout (s)**  
How long the unit will wait to gather data from the serial port before sending an e-mail message; data will be sent immediately upon reaching Message Max Size.  
  
Default: **10**
- **Transfer Mode**  
Select how the data received on COM1 is to be sent to the email addressee. Options are: Text, Attached File, Hex Code.  
Default: **Text**



SMTP: Simple Mail Transport Protocol is a protocol used to transfer mail across an IP network.



## 4.0 Configuration

### IP Protocol Config (Continued...)

**SMS Transparent Mode:** Serial data from the COM1 port can be send to one or multiple destinations via SMS text messaging. SMS messages received by the VIP4G can also be sent to the COM1 port.

**SMS Configuration**

|                  |           |                         |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| Message Max Size | 160       | [1...160]               |
| Reply Timeout(s) | 10        | [1...65535] default: 10 |
| Access Control   | Anonymous |                         |
| Read SMS Control | Delete    |                         |

**SMS Access Control Phone List**

Example: +1403xxxxxxx

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| Phone Number 1 | +15878938644 |
| Phone Number 2 |              |
| Phone Number 3 |              |
| Phone Number 4 |              |
| Phone Number 5 |              |

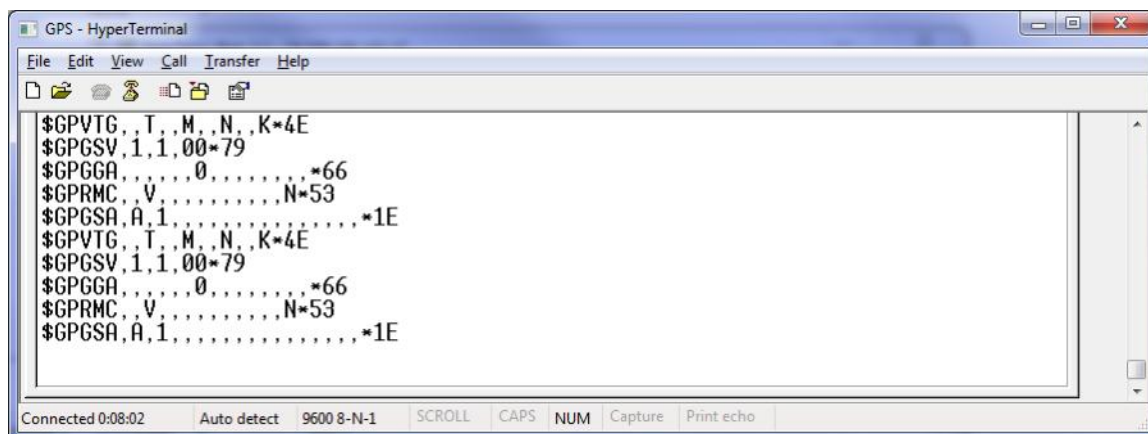
Image 4-5-3: Comport > SMS Transparent Mode

- Message Max Size**  
 Enter the maximum message size. Once the number of characters has been reached the VIP4G will package the data up and send it as a SMS message to the number(s) specified. [1....160]. The character timeout can be used to send messages more frequently by detecting a pause in the incoming data.  
 Default: **160**
- Reply Timeout(s)**  
 Enter a value for the Reply Timeout in seconds.  
 Default: **10**
- Access Control**  
 By selecting **Anonymous**, the VIP4G will accept a SMS message from any number. If **Control Phone List** is selected, only messages from the numbers in the Access Control List will be accepted.  
 Default: **Anonymous**
- Read SMS Control**  
 Select **Keep in SIM Card** to save incoming SMS messages in the SIM card, select **Delete** to delete messages once they have been output to serial port.  
 Default: **Keep in SIM Card**
- Access Control Phone List**  
 Messages can be sent to up to five (5) numbers, also, this list can be used to filter incoming SMS messages (See Access Control)  
 Default: **None**

## 4.0 Configuration

### IP Protocol Config (Continued...)

**GPS Transparent Mode:** When in GPS Transparent Mode, GPS data is reported out the serial port at 1 second intervals. Sample output is shown below:



```

$GPVTG,T,M,N,K*4E
$GPGSV,1,1,00*79
$GPGGA,,,,,0,,,,,*66
$GPRMC,V,,,,,N*53
$GPGSA,A,1,,,,,*,1E
$GPVTG,T,M,N,K*4E
$GPGSV,1,1,00*79
$GPGGA,,,,,0,,,,,*66
$GPRMC,V,,,,,N*53
$GPGSA,A,1,,,,,*,1E

```

Image 4-5-4: Comport > GPS Transparent Mode

### Values (selection)

TCP Client  
 TCP Server  
 TCP Client/Server  
 UDP Point-to-Point  
 UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P)  
**UDP Point-to-Multipoint(MP)**  
 UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint  
 SMTP Client  
 SMS Transparent Mode  
 GPS Transparent Mode

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.6 I/O

#### 4.6.1 I/O > Status

The VIP4G has 4 status inputs, which can be used with various alarms and sensors for monitoring, telling the modem when certain events have occurred, such as an intrusion alarm on a door, a temperature threshold has been exceeded, or a generator has failed, out of fuel. Also included are 4 outputs, that can be used to drive external relays to remotely control equipment and devices.

| System        | Network | Carrier   | Wireless      | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tool |
|---------------|---------|-----------|---------------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|------|
| Status        | OUTPUT  | I/O Rules | Accelerometer |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| I/O Status    |         |           |               |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| INPUT STATUS  |         |           |               |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| INPUT 1       |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| INPUT 2       |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| INPUT 3       |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| INPUT 4       |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| OUTPUT STATUS |         |           |               |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| OUTPUT 1      |         |           | Close         |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| OUTPUT 2      |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| OUTPUT 3      |         |           | Close         |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |
| OUTPUT 4      |         |           | Open          |         |     |     |          |     |          |      |

Image 4-6-1: I/O > Status

#### Input Status

The WebUI will display the current state of each input. The I/O pins are all normally open so an open status indicates that there is nothing connected to the input pins, or that an event has not occurred to trigger the input. The inputs have a small wetting current (Vin) used to detect a contact closure, and prevent false readings by any noise or intermittent signals, it has a threshold sensitivity of 1.8V.

#### Output Status

The WebUI will display the current state of each control output. Using the Output menu discussed in the next section, a user can remotely control the status of the output pins.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.6.2 I/O > OUTPUT

Each of the 4 Outputs can be controlled separately, allowing a user to remotely trigger an event.

| System | Network       | Carrier   | Wireless      | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--------|---------------|-----------|---------------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status | <b>OUTPUT</b> | I/O Rules | Accelerometer |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |

**OUTPUT Configuration**

| Output   | Open                             | Close                            |
|----------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| OUTPUT 1 | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> |
| OUTPUT 2 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            |
| OUTPUT 3 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            |
| OUTPUT 4 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            |

Image 4-6-2: I/O > OUTPUT

The output pins on the VIP4G can be used provide output signals, which can be used to drive an external relay to control an external device. Maximum recommended load for the Output Pin is 150mA @ 32 VDC (Vin)

### 4.6.3 I/O > I/O Rules

Custom rules can be applied to the I/O behavior, such as setting a output after a specified time, or an input or combination of inputs triggering output(s).

| System | Network | Carrier          | Wireless      | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--------|---------|------------------|---------------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Status | OUTPUT  | <b>I/O Rules</b> | Accelerometer |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |

**I/O Rules**

**I/O Rules Configuration**

I/O Port Rule Define: User Custom Rules

RULE NAME: rule0

I/O RULE MODE: Use Timer Only

1 Seconds

**INPUT EVENT:**

| Input   | Open                             | Close                 |
|---------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| INPUT 1 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| INPUT 2 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| INPUT 3 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| INPUT 4 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

**ACTION TO OUTPUT:**

| Output   | n/a                              | Open                  | Close                 |
|----------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| OUTPUT 1 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| OUTPUT 2 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| OUTPUT 3 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| OUTPUT 4 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

Add To I/O RULE LIST

**I/O RULE LIST**

| Name | Rule Mode | Expiration Time | Input1 | Input2 | Input3 | Input4 | Output1 | Output2 | Output3 | Output4 |
|------|-----------|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|      |           |                 |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |

Image 4-6-3: I/O > I/O Rules

## 4.0 Configuration

### I/O Port Rule Define

Set the type of I/O rules to perform:

Disabled: Outputs have no logical connection to inputs.

Default Rules:

Each input has a logical connection to each output as follows:

Input 1 -> Output 1

Input 2 -> Output 2

Input 3 -> Output 3

Input 4 -> Output 4

Custom Rules:

User can make custom rules to trigger output states. Custom rules can contain any of the following I/O rules:

- A timer has finished counting down
- A input signal has changed state
- A combination of a input state and a timer.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable**

Default Rules

Custom Rules

### Rule Name

Each I/O rule must have a unique name. This is for reference purposes and has no effect on the rule itself.

#### Values (characters)

**rule0**

### I/O Rule Mode

Define the parameters of the desired rule:

*Use Timer Only:* Once the programmed timer has expired, the defined output state will be triggered.

*Use Input States Only:* The VIP4G will set puts as defined based on input states.

*Use Input States With Timer:* A combination of inputs states and a timer would trigger an output action when the input state if changed for more than the specified time.

#### Values (selection)

**Use Timer Only**

Use Input States Only

Use Input States With

Timer

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.6.4 I/O > Accelerometer

The VIP4G has a internal Accelerometer, which can be configured to report events to a remote host based on a specific physical activity.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for the Accelerometer Report. The top navigation bar includes tabs for System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. The I/O tab is selected, and the Accelerometer sub-tab is active. The main content area is titled 'Accelerometer Report' and contains a 'Report Configuration' section. This section includes the following settings:

| Accelerometer Report | Enable  |
|----------------------|---|
| Report Trigger Mode  | Event   |
| Interval Time(s)     | 120 [0 ~ 65535]   |
| Report Message       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All <input type="checkbox"/> Impact <input type="checkbox"/> Activity <input type="checkbox"/> Inactivity |
| Report Format Type   | TAIP  |
| Remote IP            | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0   |
| Remote PORT          | 20100 [0 ~ 65535]   |

Image 4-6-4: I/O > Accelerometer

#### Accelerometer Report

Enable or disable reporting by the Accelerometer.

##### Values (selection)

Disable  
Enable

#### Report Trigger Mode

Select reporting on event, timer or both.

##### Values (selection)

Event  
Timer  
Event OR Timer

#### Interval

Set the time at which events will be reported if the timer feature is selected.

##### Values (seconds)

120

#### Report Message

Select the types of events that cause a report to be sent.

##### Values (selection)

ALL  
Impact  
Activity  
Inactivity



## 4.0 Configuration

### Report Format Type

Select the format in which the report will be sent, TAIP or Text.

#### Values (selection)

TAIP  
Text

### Remote IP

Enter the IP Address of the remote host. This is the address in which the reports will be sent via UDP packets.

#### Values (IP Address)

0.0.0.0

### Remote PORT

Enter the UDP port number to send the reports.

#### Values (Port)

20100

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7 GPS

#### 4.7.1 GPS > Location

##### Location Map

The location map shows the location on the VIP4G. The unit will attempt to get the GPS coordinates from the built in GPS receiver, and if unsuccessful, will use the Cell ID location reported by the Cellular Carrier.

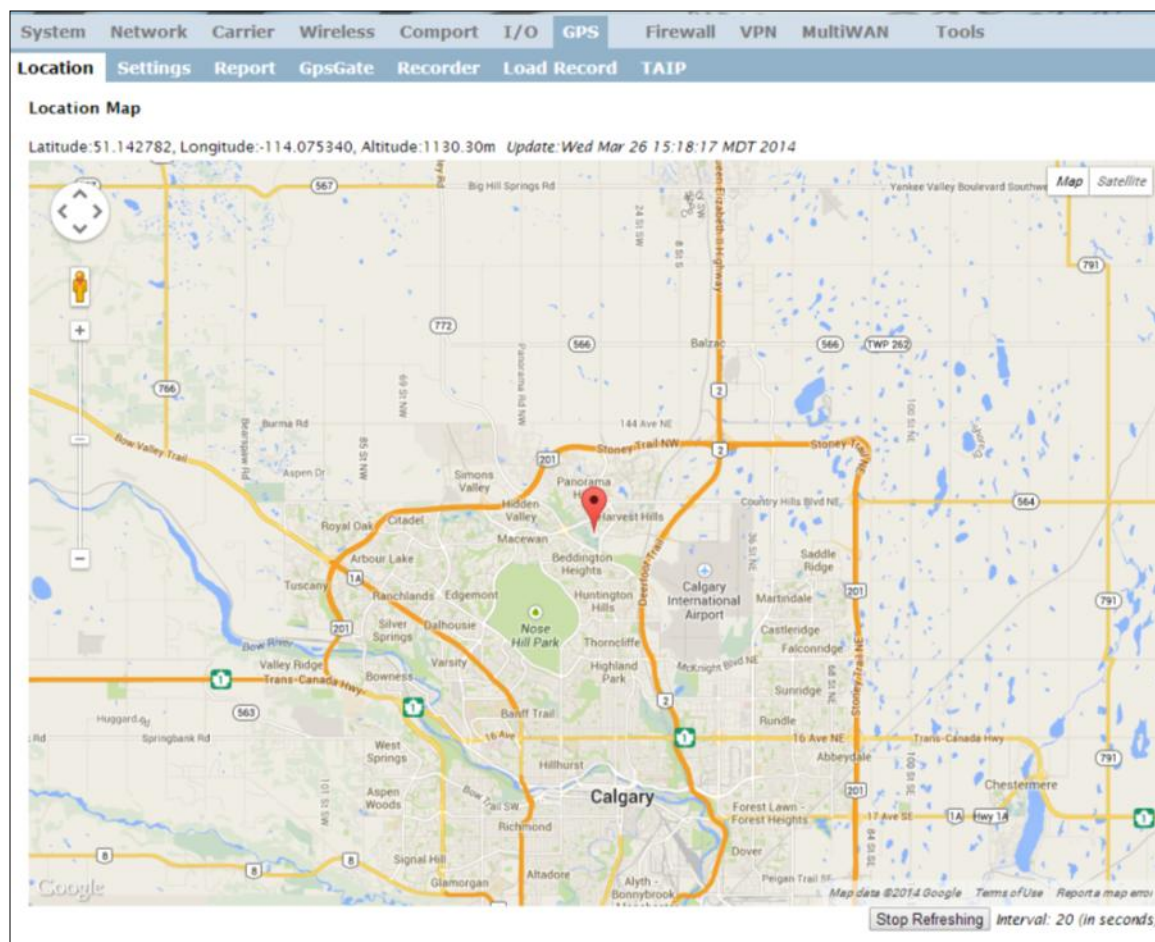


Image 4-7-1: GPS > Location Map

When using standalone GPS the specific coordinates are shown as in the above screenshot. If the VIP4G is unable to locate GPS satellites, or if configured to use Embedded Carrier GPS, only the estimated location of the VIP4G is shown with a radius drawn on the map.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.2 GPS > Settings

The VIP4G can be polled for GPS data via GPSD standards and/or provide customizable reporting to up to 4 different hosts using UDP or Email Reporting.

GPS data can also be reported to the COM1 serial port. For more information, refer to the COM1 > IP Protocol Config > GPS Transparent Mode section.

| System                    | Network  | Carrier                     | Wireless | Comport  | I/O         | GPS  | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|---------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|----------|----------|-------------|------|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Location                  | Settings | Report                      | GpsGate  | Recorder | Load Record | TAIP |          |     |          |       |
| GPS Service Configuration |          |                             |          |          |             |      |          |     |          |       |
| Settings Option:          |          |                             |          |          |             |      |          |     |          |       |
| GPS Status                |          | Enable ▾                    |          |          |             |      |          |     |          |       |
| GPS Source                |          | Standalone GPS ▾            |          |          |             |      |          |     |          |       |
| TCP Port                  |          | 2947 0~65535, default: 2947 |          |          |             |      |          |     |          |       |

Image 4-7-2: GPS > Settings

#### GPS Status

Enable or disable the GPS polling function of the VIP4G.

##### Values

Disable / Enable

#### GPS Source

Select the data source for GPS data.

##### Values

Stand Alone GPS  
Embedded Carrier GPS

#### TCP Port

Specify the TCP port on the VIP4G where the GPS service is running and remote systems can connect and poll for GPSD data.

##### Values

2947

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.3 GPS > GPS Report

The VIP4G can provide customizable reporting to up to 4 hosts using UDP or Email Reporting.

| System  | Network | Carrier | Wireless | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|---|---------|---------|----------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| <div> <div>Location</div> <div>Settings</div> <div>Report</div> <div>GpsGate</div> <div>Recorder</div> <div>Load Record</div> <div>TAIP</div> </div>  |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |
| <b>GPS Report Configuration</b>   |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |
| <b>GPS Report No.1</b>  |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |
| <div> <div>Report Define</div> <div> <div>UDP Report ▼</div> <div>Time Interval</div> <div>600 (s)</div> <div>Message 1</div> <div>ALL NMEA ▼</div> <div>Message 2</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Message 3</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Message 4</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Trigger Set</div> <div>Only Timer ▼</div> <div>Local Streaming</div> <div>Disable ▼</div> <div>UDP Remote IP</div> <div>0.0.0.0 (x.x.x.x)</div> <div>UDP Remote PORT</div> <div>20175 [0~65535]</div> </div> </div>   |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |
| <b>GPS Report No.2</b>  |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |
| <div> <div>Report Define</div> <div> <div>Email Report ▼</div> <div>Time Interval</div> <div>600 (s)</div> <div>Message 1</div> <div>ALL NMEA ▼</div> <div>Message 2</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Message 3</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Message 4</div> <div>None ▼</div> <div>Trigger Set</div> <div>Only Timer ▼</div> <div>Mail Subject</div> <div>GPSReportMessage2</div> <div>Mail Server(IP/Name)</div> <div>smtp.gmail.com:465 (xxx:port)</div> <div>User Name</div> <div>@gmail.com</div> <div>Password</div> <div>***</div> <div>Mail Recipient</div> <div>host@ (xx@xx.xx)</div> </div> </div> |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |

Image 4-7-3: GPS > GPS Report

#### Report Define

Enable UDP and/or Email or disable GPS Reporting. Up to 4 reports can be set up and configured independently.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable**  
 UDP Report  
 Email Report

#### Time Interval

The interval timer specifies the frequency at which the GPS data is reported in seconds.

#### Values (seconds)

**600**

## 4.0 Configuration

### Message 1-4

The Message field allows customization of up to 4 different GPS messages to be sent to the specified host.

|          |   |   |
|----------|---|---|
| None     | - | Message is not used, no data will be sent |
| ALL      | - | Sends all of the below                    |
| GGA      | - | GPS Fix Data                              |
| GSA      | - | Overall Satellite Data                    |
| GSV      | - | Detailed Satellite Data                   |
| RMC      | - | Recommended Min Data for GPS              |
| VTG      | - | Vector Track & Ground Speed               |
| GPSTGate | - | For use with GPSTGate Tracking Software   |

#### Values (selection)

None  
**ALL NMEA**  
 GGA  
 GSA  
 GSV  
 RMC  
 VTG  
 Latitude/Longitude  
 GPSTGate UDP Protocol

### Trigger Set

The trigger condition defines the conditions that must be met before a GPS update is reported. If OR is chosen, the Repeater Timer OR the Distance trigger conditions must be met before an update is sent. The AND condition, requires that both the Repeat timer AND the Distance trigger conditions be met before an update is sent.

#### Values (selection)

**Only Timer**  
 Timer AND Distance  
 Timer OR Distance

### Distance Set

The distance parameter allows the GPS data to only be sent when a specified distance has been traveled since the last report.

#### Values (meters)

1000

### UDP Remote IP / Port

This is the IP Address and port of the remote host in which the UDP packets are to be sent.

#### Values (Address/Port)

0.0.0.0 / 20175

### Mail Subject

If an Email report is chosen, the subject line of the Email can be defined here.

#### Values (characters)

1000

### Mail Server

If an Email report is to be sent, the outgoing mail server must be defined, and the port number.

#### Values (Address:port)

smtp.gmail.com:465

### Username / Password

Some outgoing mail servers required username and password to prevent an account being used for spam. Enter the login credentials here.

#### Values (characters)

Username / password

### Mail Recipient

Some outgoing mail servers require a username and password to prevent an account being used for spam. Enter the login credentials here.

#### Values (characters)

host@email.com



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.4 GPS > GpsGate

The VIP4G is compatible with *GpsGate - GPS Tracking Software*, which is a 3rd party mapping solution used for various GPS services including vehicle and asset tracking. The VIP4G can communicate with GpsGate via Tracker Mode and TCP/IP. (UDP reporting can also send information to GpsGate, see the GPS > Report - UDP Reports)

The screenshot shows the 'GpsGate TrackerOne Connection' configuration window. It has tabs for 'Location', 'Settings', 'Report', 'GpsGate', 'Recorder', 'Load Record', and 'TAIP'. The 'GpsGate' tab is selected. Under 'Tracker Device Setting', the following settings are visible:

- Mode Set:** Enable Tracker Mode (dropdown)
- Server Command Channel:** TCP and SMS (dropdown)
- TCP Alive Mode:** \_Ping Command (dropdown)
- Alive Time Interval:** 150 (input field) (s)
- Setup Phone Filter:** Disable: Accept All (dropdown)
- Motion Trigger:** Enable Motion Trigger (dropdown)
- Send IO Status:** Disable (dropdown)
- When GPS Invalid, Sending Data:** Not Use Last Valid Position (dropdown)

Image 4-7-4: GPS > GpsGate Tracker Mode

### GpsGate - Tracker Mode

| Mode Set  |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Enable GpsGate Tracker Mode or TCP modes. In tracker mode The VIP4G and GpsGate software will communicate via TCP/IP, however if a connection is not available it will attempt to use SMS messaging.</p>       | Values (selection)   |
|   | <p><b>Disable</b><br/>           Enable Tracker Mode<br/>           Enable TCP Send Mode</p> |
| Server Command Channel  |  |
| <p>By default VIP4G and GpsGate will use TCP and SMS to ensure communication between each other. It is also possible to specify TCP or SMS communication only. Initial setup in Tracker mode must be via SMS.</p> | Values (seconds)   |
|   | <p><b>TCP and SMS</b><br/>           TCP Only<br/>           SMS Only</p>                    |
| TCP Alive Mode / Alive Time Interval  |  |
| <p>TCP alive mode will keep TCP connection alive if tracker is not enabled or the tracker interval is too long. The default is 150 seconds.</p>   | Values (seconds)   |
|   | 150  |



## 4.0 Configuration

### Setup Phone Filter

A phone number filter can be applied to prevent SMS commands not intended for the VIP4G from being processed.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable: Accept All**  
Enable Filter

### Motion Trigger

Use this parameter to enable or disable the motion trigger in the VIP4G.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable**  
Enable Motion Trigger

### Send IO Status

When enabled, the VIP4G will send the current status of the Digital I/O inputs and/or outputs to the GpsGate Server.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable**  
Send Input Status  
Send Output Status  
Send Input&Output Status

### When GPS Invalid, Sending Data

Specify what happens when the GPS data is invalid, either use the last valid position or do not use the last valid position.

#### Values (selection)

**Not Use Last Valid Position**  
Use Last Valid Position

### GpsGate - TCP Mode

| System  | Network                       | Carrier | Wireless | Comport  | I/O         | GPS  | Firewall | VPN | Mu |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|---------|----------|----------|-------------|------|----------|-----|----|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|---------|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Location</th> <th>Settings</th> <th>Report</th> <th>GpsGate</th> <th>Recorder</th> <th>Load Record</th> <th>TAIP</th> </tr> </thead> </table>   |                               |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    | Location        | Settings               | Report            | GpsGate       | Recorder    | Load Record | TAIP            |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Location  | Settings                      | Report  | GpsGate  | Recorder | Load Record | TAIP |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| <b>GpsGate TrackerOne Connection</b>  |                               |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| <b>Tracker Device Setting</b>   |                               |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| <table> <tr> <td><b>Mode Set</b></td> <td>Enable TCP Send Mode ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server Address/IP</td> <td>192.168.168.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server Port</td> <td>30175</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server Interval</td> <td>60 (s)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Motion Distance</td> <td>100 (m)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Send IO Status</td> <td>Disable ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>When GPS Invalid, Sending Data</td> <td>Not Use Last Valid Position ▼</td> </tr> </table> |                               |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    | <b>Mode Set</b> | Enable TCP Send Mode ▼ | Server Address/IP | 192.168.168.1 | Server Port | 30175       | Server Interval | 60 (s) | Motion Distance | 100 (m) | Send IO Status | Disable ▼ | When GPS Invalid, Sending Data | Not Use Last Valid Position ▼ |
| <b>Mode Set</b>   | Enable TCP Send Mode ▼        |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Server Address/IP   | 192.168.168.1                 |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Server Port   | 30175                         |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Server Interval   | 60 (s)                        |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Motion Distance   | 100 (m)                       |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| Send IO Status  | Disable ▼                     |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |
| When GPS Invalid, Sending Data  | Not Use Last Valid Position ▼ |         |          |          |             |      |          |     |    |                 |                        |                   |               |             |             |                 |        |                 |         |                |           |                                |                               |

Image 4-7-5: GPS > GpsGate TCP Mode

## 4.0 Configuration

| Mode Set   |  |
|--|--|
| Enable GpsGate Tracker Mode or TCP modes. In TCP Mode the VIP4G will establish a connection with the GpsGate Server directly without the SMS setup process. If the TCP connection is not available, the VIP4G will continue to try to connect every few seconds. | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><br><b>Disable</b><br>Enable Tracker Mode<br>Enable TCP Send Mode                         |
| Server Address / IP  |  |
| Enter the IP Address of the server running the GpsGate application.  | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><br><b>192.168.168.1</b>   |
| Server Port  |  |
| Enter the TCP Port of the server running the GpsGate application.  | <b>Values (Port)</b><br><br><b>30175</b>   |
| Server Interval  |  |
| Define the interval at which the VIP4G will send data to the GpsGate Server.   | <b>Values (seconds)</b><br><br><b>60</b>   |
| Motion Distance  |  |
| Set the motion threshold in which the VIP4G will be triggered to send location data.   | <b>Values (meters)</b><br><br><b>100</b>   |
| Send IO Status   |  |
| When enabled, the VIP4G will send the current status of the Digital I/O inputs and/or outputs to the GpsGate Server.   | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><br><b>Disable</b><br>Send Input Status<br>Send Output Status<br>Send Input&Output Status |
| When GPS Invalid, Sending Data   |  |
| Specify what happens when the GPS data is invalid, either use the last valid position or do not use the last valid position.   | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><br><b>Not Use Last Valid Position</b><br>Use Last Valid Position                         |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.5 GPS > Recorder

The VIP4G can be configured to record events based on time intervals, and/or an event trigger and store them in non-volatile memory. These events can then be viewed within the WebUI, on a map, or sent to a remote server in a number of different formats.

| System   | Network | Carrier | Wireless | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|--|---------|---------|----------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| <div>Location Settings Report GpsGate Recorder Load Record TAIP</div> <div>GPS Recorder Service</div> <div>Current GPS Information</div> <div> <div>Local Time:</div> <div>Wed Mar 26 15:26:59 MDT 2014</div> </div> <div> <div>Satellites In View:</div> <div>15</div> </div> <div> <div>Satellites tracked:</div> <div>10</div> </div> <div> <div>Latitude:</div> <div>51.142662,N</div> </div> <div> <div>Longitude:</div> <div>-114.075531,W</div> </div> <div> <div>Altitude:</div> <div>1130.2</div> </div> <div> <div>Speed:</div> <div>0(Km/h)</div> </div> <div> <div>Orientation:</div> <div>0(Degree to North)</div> </div> <div> <div>NMEA UTC Time:</div> <div>26/03/2014 21:26:59</div> </div> <div>GPS Recorder Setting</div> <div> <div>Status</div> <div>Enable GPS Recorder ▼</div> </div> <div> <div>Record Feature Selections:</div> <div>(Record items among 16,000~36,000.)</div> </div> <div> <div>Time Interval</div> <div>30 [30~65535](s)</div> </div> <div> <div>DI/DO Changed</div> <div>Record ▼</div> </div> <div> <div>Speed</div> <div>Record ▼</div> </div> <div> <div>Over Speed</div> <div>120 [Min 30](Km/h)</div> </div> <div> <div>Orientation</div> <div>Record ▼</div> </div> <div> <div>Orientation Changed</div> <div>60 [5~180](180:Disable)</div> </div> <div> <div>Carrier RSSI Level</div> <div>Record ▼</div> </div> <div> <div>Altitude</div> <div>Record ▼</div> </div> |         |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |

Image 4-7-6: GPS > GPS Recorder Service

#### Status

Use the Status parameter to enable the GPS recording functionality of the VIP4G. The total number of records that can be recorded varies between 16,000 and 36,000, depending on the number of GPS parameters that are recorded.

#### Values (selection)

**Disable**  
Enable GPS Recorder

#### Time Interval

Define the interval at which the VIP4G will record GPS data. If there is no valid data available at the specified time (i.e. no connected satellites), the unit will wait until the next time valid information is received.

#### Values (seconds)

**300**

#### DI/DO Changed

The VIP4G can detect and report the current GPS info when a digital input or output status changes, regardless of the time interval setting.

#### Values (selection)

Record / **Don't Record**

## 4.0 Configuration

### Speed

Select Record to include the current speed in the reported data.

Values (selection)

Record / **Don't Record**

### Over Speed

Trigger a GPS record entry when the speed has exceeded the configured threshold. A minimum of 30 Km/hr is required.

Values (Km/hr)

120

### Orientation

Select Record to record the current orientation when a GPS entry is recorded. (Degree to North).

Values (selection)

Record / **Don't Record**

### Orientation Changed

Record a GPS, regardless of the time interval, if the orientation of the unit changes. (5 ~ 180: 180 = Disable)

Values (5 ~ 180)

60

### Carrier RSSI Level

Select Record to record the current 4G/Cellular RSSI level when a GPS entry is recorded. (-dB).

Values (selection)

Record / **Don't Record**

### Altitude

Select Record to record the current Altitude when a GPS entry is recorded (meters).

Values (selection)

Record / **Don't Record**

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.6 GPS > Load Record

Data that has been recorded and saved by the VIP4G can then be viewed or sent to a remote server in various formats. The data recorded can also be viewed directly by selecting "View Data" and the data can be traced on a map (internet access required), by selecting "Trace Map", or "Quick Trace". The screenshots below show the raw data that can be viewed and the Trace Map/Quick Trace output.

| System  | Network                   | Carrier                  | Wireless  | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
|---|---------------------------|--------------------------|---|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|-----------------|---------------|--------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------------|--|--------------------------|---|--|--|--------------------------|--|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------|-------|
| <div>Location Settings Report GpsGate Recorder <b>Load Record</b> TAIP</div> <div>GPS Record Review and Load Service</div> <div>Current Position Record</div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Start Time(UTC)</th> <th>End Time(UTC)</th> <th>Select</th> <th>Review/Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2014-03-26 15:19:14</td> <td>2014-03-27 16:30:14</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2014-03-27 16:30:14 ...</td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Select All <a href="#">Quick Trace</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div>Send Record To Server</div> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Record Time Range</td> <td>Please Select Above Items</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Send Mode/Protocol</td> <td>Plain Text via UDP ▾</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server Address/IP</td> <td>nms.microhardcorp.co</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server Port</td> <td>30175</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> |                           |                          |   |         |     |     |          |     |          |       | Start Time(UTC) | End Time(UTC) | Select | Review/Operation | 2014-03-26 15:19:14 | 2014-03-27 16:30:14 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a> | 2014-03-27 16:30:14 ... |  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a> |  |  | <input type="checkbox"/> | Select All <a href="#">Quick Trace</a> | Record Time Range | Please Select Above Items | Send Mode/Protocol | Plain Text via UDP ▾ | Server Address/IP | nms.microhardcorp.co | Server Port | 30175 |
| Start Time(UTC)   | End Time(UTC)             | Select                   | Review/Operation                                    |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| 2014-03-26 15:19:14   | 2014-03-27 16:30:14       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a> |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| 2014-03-27 16:30:14 ...   |                           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">View Data</a> <a href="#">Trace Map</a> |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
|   |                           | <input type="checkbox"/> | Select All <a href="#">Quick Trace</a>              |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| Record Time Range   | Please Select Above Items |                          |   |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| Send Mode/Protocol  | Plain Text via UDP ▾      |                          |   |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| Server Address/IP   | nms.microhardcorp.co      |                          |   |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |
| Server Port   | 30175                     |                          |   |         |     |     |          |     |          |       |                 |               |        |                  |                     |                     |                          |   |                         |  |                          |   |  |  |                          |  |                   |                           |                    |                      |                   |                      |             |       |

| System  | Network   | Carrier     | Wireless | Comport | I/O   | GPS   | Firewall | VPN      | MultiWAN | Tools |
|---|-----------|-------------|----------|---------|-------|-------|----------|----------|----------|-------|
| Location Settings Report GpsGate Recorder <b>Load Record</b> TAIP |           |             |          |         |       |       |          |          |          |       |
| GPS Record Review   |           |             |          |         |       |       |          |          |          |       |
| Record Time(UTC)  | Latitude  | Longitude   | Input    | Output  | Speed | Angle | RSSI     | Altitude |          |       |
| 2014-03-26 15:19:14   | 51.142761 | -114.075417 | 0000     | 0000    | 0     |       | -59      | 1108     |          |       |
| Local Record  |           |             | 0000     | 0000    |       |       | 54       |          |          |       |

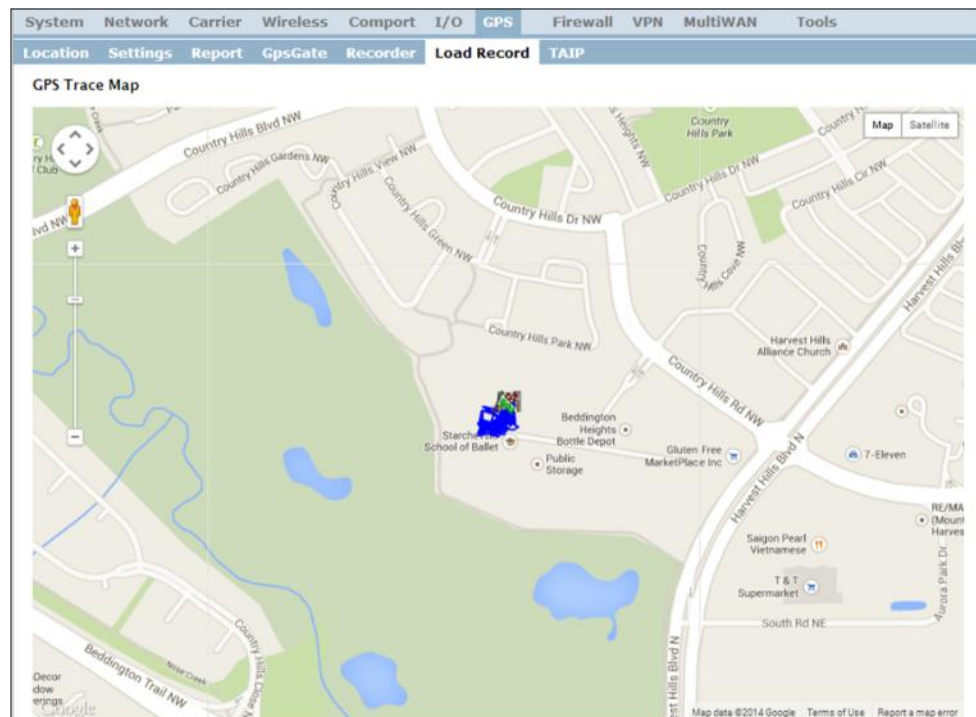


Image 4-7-7: GPS > GPS Load Record

## 4.0 Configuration

### Record Time Range

Check the boxes next to the records listed above that are to be sent to the server.

#### Values (selection)

(no default)

### Send Mode / Protocol

Specify the data format / protocol type for the data to be sent.

#### Values (selection)

NMEA via UDP  
NMEA via TCP  
GpsGate via UDP  
GpsGate via TCP  
**Plain Text via UDP**  
Plain Text via TCP

### Server Address/IP

Enter the address or IP address of the remote server to which the data is to be sent.

#### Values (IP)

nms.microhardcorp.com

### Server Port

Enter the UDP/TCP port number of the remote server to which the data is to be sent.

#### Values (Port)

30175



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.7.7 GPS > TAIP

The VIP4G has the ability to send GPS data in TAIP (Trimble ACSII Interface Protocol) format to up to 4 different TAIP servers. The following section describes the configuration parameters required to initialize TAIP reporting.

| System   | Network  | Carrier | Wireless | Comport  | I/O         | GPS  | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |
|----------|----------|---------|----------|----------|-------------|------|----------|-----|----------|-------|
| Location | Settings | Report  | GpsGate  | Recorder | Load Record | TAIP |          |     |          |       |

#### TAIP Configuration

**Settings No.1**

TAIP service status: **Enabled** ▼

Remote TAIP Server: **0.0.0.0**

Socket Type: **UDP** ▼

Remote TAIP Port: **21000**

Message Type: **RPV** ▼

Interval: **5** (s)

Vehicle ID: **0000** 4 alpha-numeric

**Settings No.2**

TAIP service status: **Disabled** ▼

**Settings No.3**

TAIP service status: **Disabled** ▼

**Settings No.4**

TAIP service status: **Disabled** ▼

Image 4-7-8: GPS > TAIP

#### TAIP service status

Enable or disable TAIP service on the VIP4G. The VIP4G can report TAIP to up to 4 different hosts.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / **Disable**

#### Remote TAIP Server

Enter the IP Address of the Remote TAIP Server.

#### Values (IP Address)

0.0.0.0

#### Socket Type

Select the socket type that is used by the Remote TAIP server. Select TCP or UDP, this will define how the connection (TCP) or data is sent (UDP) to the server.

#### Values (selection)

**UDP** / TCP

#### Remote TAIP Port

Enter the TCP or UDP port number used on the Remote TAIP server.

#### Values (TCP/UDP)

**UDP** / TCP

## 4.0 Configuration

### Message Type

Select between RPV and RLN message types.

#### Values (selection)

RPV - Position/Velocity  
RLN - Long Navigation Message

**RPV / RLN**

### Interval

Set the frequency at which TAIP messages are reported to the remote server. The unit used is seconds, and the default value is 60 seconds.

#### Values (seconds)

**60**

### Vehicle ID

Set the Vehicle ID using 4 alpha-numeric characters.

#### Values (chars)

**0000**

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8 Firewall

#### 4.8.1 Firewall > Status

Firewall Status allows a user to see detailed information about how the firewall is operating. The All, Filter, Nat, Raw, and Mangle options can be used to view different aspects of the firewall.

The screenshot displays the Firewall Status page with the following sections:

**System Network Carrier Wireless Comport I/O GPS Firewall VPN MultiWAN Tools**

**Status General Rules Port Forwarding MAC-IP List Reset**

**Firewall Status**

Status and Rules

Target Filter

**Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)**

| num | pkts  | bytes | target     | prot | opt | in | out | source    | destination | options                   |
|-----|-------|-------|------------|------|-----|----|-----|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1   | 26008 | 1366K | ACCEPT     | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   | state RELATED,ESTABLISHED |
| 2   | 591   | 30779 | ACCEPT     | all  | --  | lo | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 3   | 66    | 3536  | syn_flood  | tcp  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   | tcp flags:0x17/0x02       |
| 4   | 508   | 42855 | input_rule | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 5   | 508   | 42855 | input      | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |

**Chain FORWARD (policy DROP 0 packets, 0 bytes)**

| num | pkts | bytes | target           | prot | opt | in | out | source    | destination | options                   |
|-----|------|-------|------------------|------|-----|----|-----|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1   | 17   | 1375  | zone_wan2_MSSFIX | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 2   | 17   | 1375  | zone_wan_MSSFIX  | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 3   | 0    | 0     | ACCEPT           | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   | state RELATED,ESTABLISHED |
| 4   | 17   | 1375  | forwarding_rule  | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 5   | 17   | 1375  | forward          | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 6   | 0    | 0     | reject           | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |

**Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)**

| num | pkts  | bytes | target      | prot | opt | in | out | source    | destination | options                   |
|-----|-------|-------|-------------|------|-----|----|-----|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1   | 26133 | 1611K | ACCEPT      | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   | state RELATED,ESTABLISHED |
| 2   | 591   | 30779 | ACCEPT      | all  | --  | *  | lo  | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 3   | 23    | 1758  | output_rule | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |
| 4   | 23    | 1758  | output      | all  | --  | *  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |                           |

**Chain forward (1 references)**

| num | pkts | bytes | target            | prot | opt | in      | out | source    | destination | options |
|-----|------|-------|-------------------|------|-----|---------|-----|-----------|-------------|---------|
| 1   | 0    | 0     | zone_wan_forward  | all  | --  | br-wan  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |         |
| 2   | 17   | 1375  | zone_lan_forward  | all  | --  | br-lan  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |         |
| 3   | 0    | 0     | zone_wan_forward  | all  | --  | br-wan  | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |         |
| 4   | 0    | 0     | zone_wan2_forward | all  | --  | br-wan2 | *   | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0.0.0.0/0   |         |

**Chain forwarding\_lan (1 references)**

| num | pkts | bytes | target | prot | opt | in | out | source | destination | options |
|-----|------|-------|--------|------|-----|----|-----|--------|-------------|---------|
|-----|------|-------|--------|------|-----|----|-----|--------|-------------|---------|

**Chain forwarding\_rule (1 references)**

| num | pkts | bytes | target | prot | opt | in | out | source | destination | options |
|-----|------|-------|--------|------|-----|----|-----|--------|-------------|---------|
|-----|------|-------|--------|------|-----|----|-----|--------|-------------|---------|

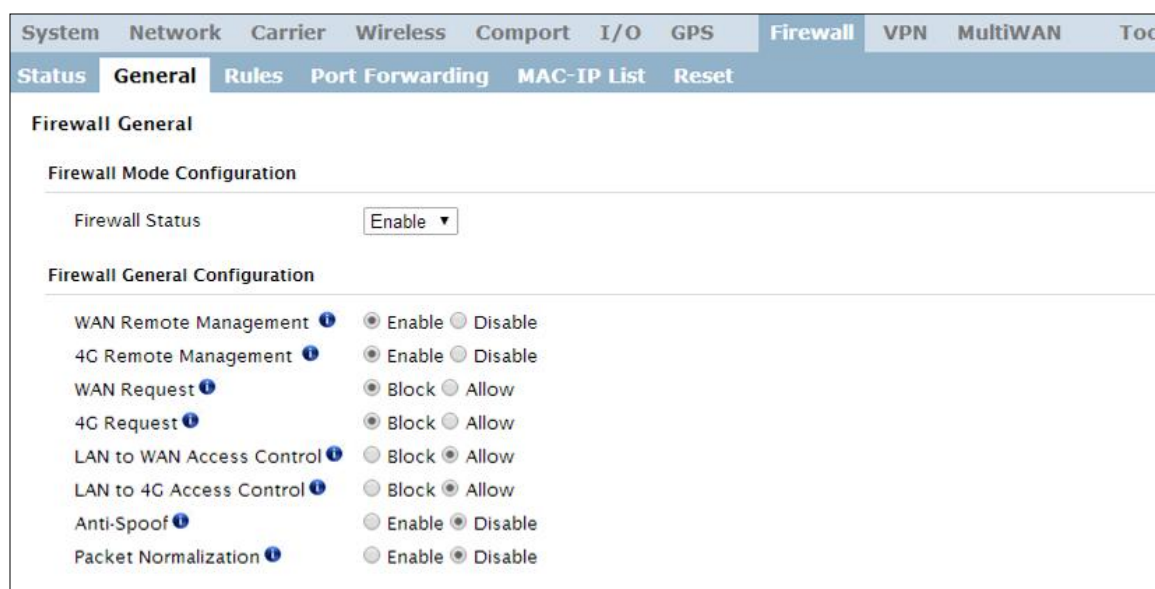
Image 4-8-1: Firewall > Status

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8.2 Firewall > General

The General Firewall settings allow users to enable or disable the firewall, and to decide which areas of the modem to protect. The Firewall can also be reset to factory defaults from this area of the WebUI.

In a cellular device such as this, it is highly recommended to configure the firewall to protect any devices connected to the modem, and to control data usage. This is especially important units set up with a public IP address as the modem is effectively on the public internet and is susceptible to a wide range of threats which may severely impact the data usage. This can be avoided by blocking all 4G/Cellular traffic and setting up specific rules to either open only used ports, or even restrict access to specific IP/networks.



| System | Network | Carrier | Wireless        | Comport     | I/O   | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Too |
|--------|---------|---------|-----------------|-------------|-------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|
| Status | General | Rules   | Port Forwarding | MAC-IP List | Reset |     |          |     |          |     |

#### Firewall General

##### Firewall Mode Configuration

Firewall Status:

##### Firewall General Configuration

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| WAN Remote Management     | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| 4G Remote Management      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| WAN Request               | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block <input type="radio"/> Allow    |
| 4G Request                | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block <input type="radio"/> Allow    |
| LAN to WAN Access Control | <input type="radio"/> Block <input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow    |
| LAN to 4G Access Control  | <input type="radio"/> Block <input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow    |
| Anti-Spoof                | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Packet Normalization      | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |

Image 4-8-2: Firewall > General



For best practices and to control data usage it is critical that the firewall be configured properly.

It is recommended to block all incoming 4G/Cellular traffic and create rules to open specific ports and/or use ACL lists to limit incoming connections.

#### Firewall Status

##### Values

Disable / Enable

When enabled, the firewall settings are in effect. When disabled, none of the settings configured in the menu's below have an effect, the modem is "open" to anyone.

#### WAN Remote Management

##### Values

Enable / Disable

Allow remote management of the VIP4G on the WAN side using the WebUI on port 80(HTTP), and 443 (HTTPS). If disabled, the configuration can only be accessed from the LAN (or 4G if enabled)..

#### 4G Remote Management

##### Values

Enable / Disable

Allow remote management of the VIP4G from the 4G side of using the WebUI on port 80(HTTP), and 443 (HTTPS). If disabled, the configuration can only be accessed from the LAN (or WAN if enabled)..

## 4.0 Configuration



When 4G is set to 'Allow' the modem is open to anyone, this is not recommended as it may impact data usage from unwanted sources.

### WAN Request

When Blocked the VIP4G will block all requests from devices on the WAN unless specified otherwise in the Access Rules, MAC List, IP List configurations. Access to ports 80 (HTTP) and 443 (HTTPS-if enabled), is still available unless disabled in the **WAN Remote Management** option.

#### Values

Block / Allow

### 4G Request

When Blocked all requests from devices on the 4G (Wireless Carrier) side will be blocked, unless specified otherwise in the Access Rules, MAC List, IP List configurations. Access to ports 80 (HTTP) and 443 (HTTPS-if enabled), is still available unless disabled in the **4G Remote Management** option.

#### Values

Block / Allow

### LAN to WAN Access Control

Allows or Blocks traffic from the LAN accessing the WAN unless specified otherwise using the Access Rules, MAC, and IP List configuration.

#### Values

Block / Allow

### LAN to 4G Access Control

Allows or Blocks traffic from the LAN accessing the 4G connection unless specified otherwise using the Access Rules, MAC, and IP List configuration.

#### Values

Block / Allow

### Anti-Spoof

The Anti-Spoof protection is to create some firewall rules assigned to the external interface (WAN & 4G/Cellular) of the firewall that examines the source address of all packets crossing that interface coming from outside. If the address belongs to the internal network or the firewall itself, the packet is dropped.

#### Values

Enable / Disable

### Packet Normalization

Packet Normalization is the normalization of packets so there are no ambiguities in interpretation by the ultimate destination of the packet. The scrub directive also reassembled fragmented packets, protecting some operating systems from some forms of attack, and drops TCP packets that have invalid flag combinations.

#### Values

Enable / Disable



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8.3 Firewall > Rules

Once the firewall is turned on, rules configuration can be used to define specific rules on how local and remote devices access different ports and services. MAC List and IP List are used for general access, and are applied before rules are processed.



Refer to Appendix D for an example of how to set up a firewall to block all connections and then add access to only specific IP's and Ports.

#### Appendix D: Firewall Example

It is highly recommended to block as much traffic as possible from the modem, especially when using a public IP address. The best security would be to allow traffic only from trusted IP addresses, and only the specific ports being used, and block everything else. Not configuring the firewall and the firewall rules correctly could result in unpredictable data charges from the cellular carrier.

Image 4-8-3: Firewall > Rules

#### Rule Name

The rule name is used to identify the created rule. Each rule must have a unique name and up to 10 characters can be used.

#### Values (10 Chars)

characters

#### Action

The Action is used to define how the rule handles the connection request.

ACCEPT will allow a connection, while REJECT (error) and DROP (quietly dropped), will refuse connections.

This is configured based on how the **WAN/4G Request** and **LAN to WAN/4G Access Control** are configured in the previous menus.

#### Values (selection)

ACCEPT  
DROP  
REJECT

#### Source

Select the zone which is to be the source of the data traffic. WAN applies to the WAN RJ45 connection, and 4G refers to the connection to the cellular carrier. The LAN refers to local connections on the VIP4G (Ethernet/WiFi).

#### Values

LAN / 4G / WIFI / WAN  
None



## 4.0 Configuration

| Source IPs  |   |
|---|---|
| Match incoming traffic from the specified source IP range. Boxes accept single IP Addresses without network masks, example: 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 represents all IP Addresses in the 192.168.1.0/24 network. (Put same IP in both boxes for a single IP match.)      | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><b>192.168.0.0 to 192.168.0.0</b>   |
| Destination   |   |
| Select the zone which is the intended destination of the data traffic. WAN applies to the wireless connection to the cellular carrier and the LAN refers to local connections on the VIP4G (Ethernet/WiFi)  | <b>Values (selection)</b><br>LAN / 4G / WIFI / WAN<br><b>None</b> |
| Destination IPs   |   |
| Match incoming traffic from the specified destination IP range. Boxes accept single IP Addresses without network masks, example: 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 represents all IP Addresses in the 192.168.1.0/24 network. (Put same IP in both boxes for a single IP match.) | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><b>192.168.0.0 to 192.168.0.0</b>   |
| Destination Port  |   |
| Match incoming traffic directed at the given destination port or port range.<br>(To specify a port range use a From:To (100:200) format)  | <b>Values (port)</b><br><b>0</b>                                  |
| Protocol  |   |
| The protocol field defines the transport protocol type controlled by the rule.  | <b>Values</b><br>TCP<br>UDP<br>Both<br>ICMP                       |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8.4 Firewall > Port Forwarding

The VIP4G can be used to provide remote access to connected devices. To access these devices a user must define how incoming traffic is handled by the VIP4G. If all incoming traffic is intended for a specific connected device, DMZ could be used to simplify the process, as all incoming traffic can be directed towards a specific IP address.

In the case where there is multiple devices, or only specific ports need to be passed, Port forwarding is used to forward traffic coming in from the WAN (Cellular) to specific IP Addresses and Ports on the LAN. Port forwarding can be used in combination with other firewall features, but the Firewall must be enabled for Port forwarding to be in effect. If the WAN Request is blocked on the General Tab, additional rules and/or IP Lists must be set up to allow the port forwarding traffic to pass through the firewall.

IP-Passthrough (Carrier > Settings) is another option for passing traffic through the VIP4G, in this case all traffic is passed to a single device connected to a RJ45 port on the VIP4G, The device must be set for DHCP or have the WAN IP set as its static IP, as the VIP4G assigns the WAN IP to the device, and the modem enters into a transparent mode, routing all traffic to the RJ45 port. This option bypasses all firewall features of the VIP4G, as well as all other features of the VIP4G such as COM, VPN, GPS etc.



If DMZ is enabled and an exception port for the WebUI is not specified, remote management will not be possible. The default port for remote management is TCP 80.

| System  | Network | Carrier     | Wireless      | Comport  | I/O           | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | Tools |      |        |             |               |          |               |          |    |             |      |     |      |
|---|---------|-------------|---------------|----------|---------------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-------|------|--------|-------------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|----|-------------|------|-----|------|
| <div> <div>Status</div> <div>General</div> <div>Rules</div> <div>Port Forwarding</div> <div>MAC-IP List</div> <div>Reset</div> </div>   |         |             |               |          |               |     |          |     |          |       |      |        |             |               |          |               |          |    |             |      |     |      |
| <h4>Firewall Port Forwarding</h4> <p><b>Notice</b></p> <p>Port Forwarding Rules are taken into consideration after the General firewall settings are applied. If the WAN and/or 4G cellular traffic is blocked, additional rules must be created:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Add rules in the Rules configuration to open ports or allow IP addresses.</li> <li>2. Create a IP/Mac List to allow desired connections.</li> </ol> <h4>Firewall DMZ Configuration</h4> <p>DMZ Mode: <input type="text" value="Disable"/></p> <p>DMZ Source: <input type="text" value="4G"/></p> <p>DMZ Server IP: <input type="text" value="192.168.100.100"/></p> <p>Exception Port: <input type="text" value="0"/></p> <h4>Firewall Port Forwarding Configuration</h4> <p>Name: <input type="text" value="forward1"/></p> <p>Source: <input type="text" value="4G"/></p> <p>Internal Server IP: <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/></p> <p>Internal Port: <input type="text" value="3000"/></p> <p>Protocol: <input type="text" value="TCP"/></p> <p>External Port: <input type="text" value="2000"/></p> <p><a href="#">Add Port Forwarding</a></p> <h4>Firewall Port Forwarding Summary</h4> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Source</th> <th>Internal IP</th> <th>Internal Port</th> <th>Protocol</th> <th>External Port</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>forward1</td> <td>4G</td> <td>192.168.2.1</td> <td>3000</td> <td>TCP</td> <td>2000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> |         |             |               |          |               |     |          |     |          |       | Name | Source | Internal IP | Internal Port | Protocol | External Port | forward1 | 4G | 192.168.2.1 | 3000 | TCP | 2000 |
| Name  | Source  | Internal IP | Internal Port | Protocol | External Port |     |          |     |          |       |      |        |             |               |          |               |          |    |             |      |     |      |
| forward1  | 4G      | 192.168.2.1 | 3000          | TCP      | 2000          |     |          |     |          |       |      |        |             |               |          |               |          |    |             |      |     |      |

Image 4-8-4: Firewall > Port Forwarding

#### DMZ Mode

Enable or disable DMZ Mode. DMZ can be used to forward all traffic to a specific IP address (DMZ Server IP) on the LAN.

#### Values (selection)

Disable / Enable

## 4.0 Configuration



If the firewall is set to block incoming traffic on the WAN and/or 4G interfaces, additional rules or IP/MAC lists must be configured to allow desired traffic access.

| DMZ Source   |  |
|--|--|
| Select the source for the DMZ traffic, either 4G or from WAN.  | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><b>4G / WAN</b>         |
| DMZ Server IP  |  |
| Enter the IP address of the device on the LAN side of the VIP4G where all the traffic will be forwarded to.  | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><b>192.168.100.100</b> |
| Exception Port   |  |
| Enter a exception port number that will NOT be forwarded to the DMZ server IP. Usually a configuration or remote management port that is excluded to retain external control of the VIP4G. | <b>Values (Port #)</b><br><b>443</b>                 |
| Name   |  |
| This is simply a field where a convenient reference or description is added to the rule. Each Forward must have a unique rule name and can use up to 10 characters.                        | <b>Values (10 chars)</b><br><b>Forward</b>           |
| Source   |  |
| Select the source for the DMZ traffic, either 4G or from WAN.  | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><b>4G / WAN</b>         |
| Internal Server IP   |  |
| Enter the IP address of the intended internal (i.e. on LAN side of VIP4G) server. This is the IP address of the device you are forwarding traffic to.                                      | <b>Values (IP Address)</b><br><b>192.168.2.1</b>     |
| Internal Port  |  |
| Target port number of internal server on the LAN IP entered above.   | <b>Values (Port #)</b><br><b>3000</b>                |
| Protocol   |  |
| Select the type of transport protocol used. For example Telnet uses TCP, SNMP uses UDP, etc.   | <b>Values (selection)</b><br><b>TCP / UDP / Both</b> |
| External Port  |  |
| Port number of incoming request (from 4G/WAN-side).  | <b>Values (Port #)</b><br><b>2000</b>                |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8.5 Firewall > MAC-IP List

MAC List configuration can be used to control which physical LAN devices can access the ports on the VIP4G, by restricting or allowing connections based on the MAC address. IP List configuration can be used to define who or what can access the VIP4G, by restricting or allowing connections based on the IP Address/Subnet.

MAC-IP List can be used alone or in combination with LAN to WAN/4G Access Control to provide secure access to the physical ports of the VIP4G.

**Firewall MAC/IP List**

**Firewall MAC List Configuration**

Name:

Action:

Mac Address:

**Firewall IP List Configuration**

Name:

Action:

Source:

Source IPs:  To

Destination IPs:  To

**Firewall MAC List Summary**

| Name | Action | Mac Address |
|------|--------|-------------|
|------|--------|-------------|

**Firewall IP List Summary**

| Name | Action | Src | Src IP From | Src IP To | Dest IP From | Dest IP To |
|------|--------|-----|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
|------|--------|-----|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------|

Image 4-8-5: Firewall > MAC-IP List

### Firewall MAC List Configuration

The Rule Name field is required to give the rule a convenient name for reference. Each rule must have a unique name, up to 10 characters in length.

#### Rule Name

Values (10 chars)

MAC\_List

#### MAC Address

Specify the MAC Address to be added to the list. Must be entered in the correct format as seen above. Not case sensitive.

Values (MAC Address)

00:00:00:00:00:00

## 4.0 Configuration

### Firewall MAC List Configuration (Continued)

| Action  |   |
|---|---|
| <p>The Action is used to define how the rule handles the connection request.</p> <p>ACCEPT will allow a connection, while REJECT (error) and DROP (quietly dropped), will refuse connections.</p> | <p><b>Values (selection)</b></p> <p><b>ACCEPT</b><br/><b>DROP</b><br/><b>REJECT</b></p> |

### Firewall IP List Configuration

| Rule Name   |   |
|---|---|
| The Rule Name field is required to give the rule a convenient name for reference. Each rule must have a unique name, up to 10 characters in length.   | <div>Values (10 chars)</div> <div>IP_List</div>                         |
| Action  |   |
| The Action is used to define how the rule handles the connection request. ACCEPT will allow a connection, while REJECT (error) and DROP (quietly dropped), will refuse connections.   | <div>Values (selection)</div> <div>ACCEPT / DROP / REJECT</div>         |
| Source  |   |
| Enter the specific zone that the IP List will apply to, 4G (Cellular), WAN , LAN (Ethernet, WiFi) or None (both).   | <div>Values (Selection)</div> <div>LAN / WAN / / WIFI / 4G / NONE</div> |
| Source Address  |   |
| Match incoming traffic from the specified source IP range. Boxes accept single IP Addresses without network masks, example: 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 represents all IP Addresses in the 192.168.1.0/24 network. (Put same IP in both boxes for a single IP match.)      | <div>Values (IP Address)</div> <div>192.168.0.0 to 192.168.0.0</div>    |
| Destination Address   |   |
| Match incoming traffic from the specified destination IP range. Boxes accept single IP Addresses without network masks, example: 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 represents all IP Addresses in the 192.168.1.0/24 network. (Put same IP in both boxes for a single IP match.) | <div>Values (IP Address)</div> <div>192.168.0.0 to 192.168.0.0</div>    |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.8.6 Firewall > Reset

To reset the firewall back to default settings and erase all rules, port forwards, and IP/MAC lists, use the reset button see below:



Image 4-8-6: Firewall > Reset to Defaults



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.9 VPN

#### 4.9.1 VPN > Summary

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) may be configured to enable a tunnel between the VIP4G and a remote network.. The VIP4G supports VPN IPsec Gateway to Gateway (site-to-site) tunneling, meaning you are using the VIP4G to connect a tunnel to network with VPN capabilities (Another VIP4G or VPN capable device). The VIP4G can also operate as a L2TP Server, allowing users to VPN into the unit from a remote PC, and a L2TP Client.

System Network Carrier Wireless Comport I/O GPS Firewall VPN MultiWAN Tools

Summary Gateway To Gateway Client To Gateway VPN Client Access Certificate Management

Summary

Gateway To Gateway

| No.            | Name | Status | Phase2 Enc/Auth/Grp | Interface | Local Group | Remote Group | Remote Gateway | RX/TX Bytes | Tunnel Test | Config. |
|----------------|------|--------|---------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| <div>Add</div> |      |        |                     |           |             |              |                |             |             |         |

Client To Gateway

| No.            | Name | Status | Interface | Local/Remote IP Address | Server Gateway | Start Time | Duration | RX/TX Bytes | Tunnel Test | Config. |
|----------------|------|--------|-----------|-------------------------|----------------|------------|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| <div>Add</div> |      |        |           |                         |                |            |          |             |             |         |

L2TP Server

| Status  | Interface | Local IP | Client IP Range Start | Client IP Range End | Config.         |
|---------|-----------|----------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| disable | br-wan    |          |                       |                     | <div>Edit</div> |
| disable | br-wan2   |          |                       |                     | <div>Edit</div> |

L2TP Connection List

| No. | Remote Address | L2TP IP Address | Start Time | Duration | RX Bytes | TX Bytes |
|-----|----------------|-----------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|
|-----|----------------|-----------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|

VPN Client Access

| No.            | Username | Config. |
|----------------|----------|---------|
| <div>Add</div> |          |         |

Image 4-9-1: VPN > Summary

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.9.2 VPN > Gateway To Gateway (Site-to-Site)

A Gateway to Gateway connection is used to create a tunnel between two VPN devices such as an VIP4G and another device (another VIP4G or Cisco VPN Router or another vendor...). The local and remote group settings will need to be configured below to mirror those set on the other VPN device.

The screenshot shows the 'Gateway To Gateway' configuration page in the VIP4G web interface. The page has a top navigation bar with tabs: System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN (selected), MultiWAN, and Tools. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with tabs: Summary, Gateway To Gateway (selected), Client To Gateway, VPN Client Access, and Certificate Management.

The main content area is titled 'Gateway To Gateway' and contains several sections:

- Add a New Tunnel:** Includes fields for Tunnel Name, Enable (checked), Authentication (Preshared Key), and Interface (4G).
- Local Group Setup:** Includes Local Security Gateway Type (IP + Server ID), Interface IP Address (74.198.186.197), Server ID, Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP, Group Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0), and Group Subnet Gateway.
- Remote Group Setup:** Includes Remote Security Gateway Type (IP + Server ID), Gateway IP Address, Server ID, Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP, and Group Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0).
- IPSec Setup:** Includes Aggressive Mode (unchecked), Phase 1 DH Group (modp1024), Phase 1 Encryption (3des), Phase 1 Authentication (md5), Phase 1 SA Life Time(s) (28800), Perfect Forward Secrecy (unchecked), Phase 2 SA Type (ESP), Phase 2 DH Group (modp1024), Phase 2 Encryption (3des), Phase 2 Authentication (md5), Phase 2 SA Life Time(s) (3600), Preshared Key, DPD Delay(s) (32), DPD Timeout(s) (122), and DPD Action (hold).

Image 4-9-2: VPN > Gateway to Gateway

|   | Tunnel Name                   |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Enter a name for the VPN Tunnel. Up to 16 different tunnels can be created, each requiring a unique name. | Values (chars)<br><br>tunnel1 |

## 4.0 Configuration

### Enable

Used to enable (checked) is disable (unchecked) the VPN tunnel.

Values (checkbox)

Enable (Checked)

### Local Group Setup

### Local Security Gateway Type

Specify the method for identifying the router to establish the VPN tunnel. The Local Security Gateway is on this router; the Remote Security Gateway is on the other router. At least one of the routers must have either a static IP address or a dynamic IP with server id to make a connection.

Values (selection)

IP Only  
**IP + Server ID**  
 Dynamic IP + Server ID

**IP Only:** Choose this option if this router has a static WAN IP address. The WAN IP address appears automatically. For the Remote Security Gateway Type, an extra field appears. If you know the IP address of the remote VPN router, choose IP Address, and then enter the address.

**IP + Server ID:** Choose this option if this router has a static WAN IP address and a server id. The WAN IP address appears automatically. For the Remote Security Gateway Type, an extra field appears. If you know the IP address of the remote VPN router, choose IP Address, and then enter the address.

**Dynamic IP + Server ID:** Choose this option if this router has a dynamic IP address and a server id (available such as @microhard.vpn). Enter the server id to use for authentication. The server id can be used only for one tunnel connection.

### Interface IP Address

Displays the IP address of the VIP4G, which is the local VPN Gateway.

Values (IP Address)

Current IP Address

### Server ID

This option appears when the Local Security Gateway Type specifies that the Server ID is required for the connection. The Server ID must be in the format @name, where name can be anything. Both routers must know each others names to establish a connection.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

### Next-hop Gateway IP

Next-hop Gateway means the next-hop gateway IP address for the local or remote gateway participant's connection to the public network.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

### Group Subnet IP

Define the local network by specifying the local subnet. The local and remote routers must use different subnets.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

## 4.0 Configuration

### Group Subnet Mask

Specify the subnet mask of the local network address.

Values (IP Address)

255.255.255.0

### Group Subnet Gateway

Enter the Gateway for the local group network.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

### Remote Group Setup

#### Remote Security Gateway Type

Specify the method for identifying the router to establish the VPN tunnel. The Local Security Gateway is on this router; the Remote Security Gateway is on the other router. At least one of the routers must have either a static IP address or a dynamic IP with server id to make a connection. (See Local Group Setup for details)

Values (selection)

IP Only  
**IP + Server ID**  
 Dynamic IP + Server ID

#### Gateway IP Address

If the remote VPN router has a static IP address, enter the IP address of the remote VPN Gateway here.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

#### Server ID

This option appears when the Remote Security Gateway Type specifies that the Server ID is required for the connection. The Server ID must be in the format @name, where name can be anything. Both routers must know each others names to establish a connection.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

#### Next-hop Gateway IP

Next-hop Gateway means the next-hop gateway IP address for the local or remote gateway participant's connection to the public network.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

#### Subnet IP Address

Define the remote network by specifying the local subnet.

Values (IP Address)

(no default)

#### Subnet Mask

Specify the subnet mask of the remote network address.

Values (IP Address)

255.255.255.0

## 4.0 Configuration

### IPsec Setup

#### Phase 1 DH Group

Select value to match the values required by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

**modp1024**  
modp1536  
modp2048

#### Phase 1 Encryption

Select value to match the Phase 1 Encryption type used by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

3des  
aes  
aes128  
aes256

#### Phase 1 Authentication

Select value to match the Phase 1 Authentication used by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

md5  
sha1

#### Phase 1 SA Life Time

Select value to match the values required by the remote VPN router.

##### Values

**28800**

#### Perfect Forward Secrecy (pfs)

Select value to match the values required by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

#### Phase 2 DH Group

Select value to match the values required by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

**modp1024**  
modp1536  
modp2048

#### Phase 2 Encryption

Select value to match the Phase 1 Encryption type used by the remote VPN router.

##### Values (selection)

3des  
aes  
aes128  
aes256

## 4.0 Configuration

### Phase 2 Authentication

Select value to match the Phase 1 Authentication used by the remote VPN router.

#### Values (selection)

md5  
sha1

### Phase 2 SA Life Time

Select value to match the values required by the remote VPN router.

#### Values

3600

### Preshared Key

Set the Preshared Key required to authenticate with the remote VPN router.

#### Values (characters)

password

### DPD Delay(s)

Dead Peer Detection is used to detect if there is a dead peer. Set the DPD Delay (seconds), as required.

#### Values (seconds)

32

### DPD Timeout(s)

Set the DPD (Dead Peer Detection) Timeout (seconds), as required.

#### Values (seconds)

122

### DPD Action

Set the DPD action, hold or clear, as required.

#### Values (seconds)

Hold  
Clear



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.9.3 VPN > Client To Gateway (L2TP Client)

The VIP4G can operate as a L2TP Client, allowing a VPN connection to be made with a L2TP Server.

The screenshot shows the 'Client To Gateway' tab in the VPN configuration section. The interface includes several sections for configuring the L2TP client:

- Add a New Tunnel:**
  - Tunnel Name: (empty text field)
  - Enable: ☒
  - IPsec: ☒
  - Interface: 4G (dropdown menu)
- Local Group Setup:**
  - Local Security Gateway Type: IP Only (dropdown menu)
  - Interface IP Address: 100.71.239.165 (text field)
  - Next-hop Gateway IP: (empty text field)
- Remote Group Setup:**
  - Remote Security Gateway Type: IP + Server ID (dropdown menu)
  - Gateway IP Address: (empty text field)
  - Server ID: (empty text field)
  - Next-hop Gateway IP: (empty text field)
  - Group Subnet IP: (empty text field)
  - Group Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0 (text field)
- PPP Setup:**
  - Idle time before hanging up: 0 seconds [0...65535] (text field)
  - PAP: ☐ Unencrypted Password
  - CHAP: ☒ Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
  - User Name: (empty text field)
  - Redial: ☒
  - Redial attempts: 3 (text field)
  - Time between redial attempts: 15 (text field)
- IPSec Setup:**
  - Authentication: Preshared Key (dropdown menu)
  - Phase 1 SA Life Time(s): 28800 (text field)
  - Perfect Forward Secrecy: ☐
  - Phase 2 SA Life Time(s): 3600 (text field)
  - Preshared Key: (empty text field)
  - DPD Delay(s): 32 (text field)
  - DPD Timeout(s): 122 (text field)
  - DPD Action: clear (dropdown menu)
  - ☐ Advanced-

Image 4-9-3: VPN > Client to Gateway

#### Tunnel Name

Enter a name for the VPN Tunnel. Up to 16 different tunnels can be created, each requiring a unique name.

Values (chars)

tunnel1

#### Enable

Used to enable (checked) or disable (unchecked) the VPN tunnel.

Values (checkbox)

Enable (Checked)

## 4.0 Configuration

### Local Interface IP Address

This will show the WAN or 4G IP Address used for the L2TP Interface.

Values (IP Address)

*Current IP*

### Remote Gateway IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the Remote Gateway that you wish to establish a connection with.

Values (IP Address)

*none*

### Remote Server ID

Some servers require that you know the Server ID as well as the IP address. Enter the Server ID of the remote router here.

Values

*none*

### Remote Subnet IP

In order to communicate with the devices on the other side of the tunnel, the VIP4G must know which data to pass through the tunnel, to do this enter the Remote Subnet network IP address here.

Values (IP Address)

*none*

### Remote Subnet Mask

Enter the Remote Subnet Mask

Values (IP Address)

*none*

### Idle time before hanging up

Enter the Idle time (in seconds) to wait before giving up the PPP connection. The default is 0, which means the time is infinite. (0—65535)

Values (seconds)

*0*

### Username

Enter the Username

Values (chars)

*0*

### Preshared Key

The preshared key is required to connect to the L2TP Server.

Values (chars)

*0*

**IPSec Setup - See previous sections for additional info.**

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.9.4 VPN > VPN Client Access

For VPN L2TP Server operation, users will be required to provide a username and password. Use VPN Client Access to set up the required users.

|   |                    |                   |                   |                        |     |     |          |     |          |   |
|---|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|---|
| System                                    | Network            | Carrier           | Wireless          | Comport                | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN | T |
| Summary                                   | Gateway To Gateway | Client To Gateway | VPN Client Access | Certificate Management |     |     |          |     |          |   |
| <b>VPN Client Access</b>                  |                    |                   |                   |                        |     |     |          |     |          |   |
| Username <input type="text"/>             |                    |                   |                   |                        |     |     |          |     |          |   |
| New Password <input type="text"/>         |                    |                   |                   |                        |     |     |          |     |          |   |
| Confirm New Password <input type="text"/> |                    |                   |                   |                        |     |     |          |     |          |   |

Image 4-9-4: VPN > VPN Client Access

#### Username

Enter a username for the user being set up.

Values (characters)

#### New Password

Enter a password for the use.

Values (characters)

#### Confirm New Password

Enter the password again, the VIP4G will ensure that the password match.

Values (IP Address)

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.9.5 VPN > Certificate Management

When using the VPN features of the VIP4G, it is possible to select X.509 for the Authentication Type. If that is the case, the VIP4G must use the required x.509 certificates in order to establish a secure tunnel between other devices. Certificate Management allows the user a place to manage these certificates.

| System   | Network   | Carrier | Wireless | Comport | I/O | GPS | Firewall | VPN | MultiWAN                              | Tools |
|--|---|---------|----------|---------|-----|-----|----------|-----|---------------------------------------|-------|
| <b>Summary Gateway To Gateway Client To Gateway VPN Client Access Certificate Management</b> |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| <b>Certificate Management</b>  |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| <b>X509 Root Certificates</b>  |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| No.  | Name  |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | Config.                               |       |
| Import Certificate:  | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | <input type="button" value="Import"/> |       |
| <b>X509 Certificates</b>   |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| No.  | Name  |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | Config.                               |       |
| Import Certificate:  | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | <input type="button" value="Import"/> |       |
| <b>X509 Private Keys</b>   |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| No.  | Name  |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | Config.                               |       |
| Import Private key:  | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | <input type="button" value="Import"/> |       |
| <b>X509 Certificates Revocation Lists</b>  |   |         |          |         |     |     |          |     |                                       |       |
| No.  | Name  |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | Config.                               |       |
| Import Certificate:  | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |         |          |         |     |     |          |     | <input type="button" value="Import"/> |       |

Image 4-9-5: VPN > Certificate Management

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.10 MultiWAN

#### 4.10.1 MultiWAN > Status

The VIP4G is capable of having 2 WAN connections, one connected to the physical WAN port on the VIP4G and the Cellular WAN connection to the wireless carrier. The MultiWAN section allows a user to define how traffic uses these WAN's.

The main purpose of the MultiWan feature is to use one network for a primary connection, such as a local, wired ISP for broadband access, and if that connection fails or is offline, the VIP4G can automatically switch to an alternate network connection such as the 4G/Cellular connection.

The Status menu gives an overview of both WAN connections and their configuration. WAN group 1 is the wired WAN and WAN group 2 is the 4G/Cellular connection to a wireless carrier.

microhard SYSTEMS INC.

System Network Carrier Wireless Comport I/O GPS Firewall VPN MultiWAN Tools

Status Settings Traffic

Multi WAN Status

Multi WAN GROUP 1

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| WAN Name   | WAN [Primary] |
| IP Address | 192.168.1.254 |
| Gateway    | 192.168.1.1   |
| DNS        |               |
| Status     | UP            |

Multi WAN GROUP 2

|            |                               |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| WAN Name   | 4G                            |
| IP Address | 184.151.235.115               |
| Gateway    | 184.151.235.115               |
| DNS        | 70.28.245.227 184.151.118.254 |
| Status     | UP                            |

Stop Refreshing Interval: 20

Copyright © 2012 Microhard Systems Inc. VIP4G\_

Image 4-10-1: MultiWAN > Status

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.10.2 MultiWAN > Settings

The following section describes the parameters required for MultiWAN for failover purposes. The configuration for each interface is identical, so will only be described once.

The screenshot displays the 'MultiWAN' configuration page with the following settings:

- Configuration:**
  - Multi Wan status: **Enable** (dropdown)
  - Primary Connection: **WAN** (dropdown)
- WAN Interface:**
  - Health Monitor Interval: **Disable** (dropdown)
  - Health Monitor ICMP Host: **8.8.8.8** (text input)
  - Health Monitor ICMP Timeout: **3 sec.** (dropdown)
  - Attempts Before WAN Failover: **3** (dropdown)
  - Attempts Before WAN Recovery: **3** (dropdown)
  - Failover Traffic Destination: **4G** (dropdown)
- 4G Interface:**
  - Health Monitor Interval: **Disable** (dropdown)
  - Health Monitor ICMP Host: **8.8.8.8** (text input)
  - Health Monitor ICMP Timeout: **3 sec.** (dropdown)
  - Attempts Before 4G Failover: **3** (dropdown)
  - Attempts Before 4G Recovery: **3** (dropdown)
  - Failover Traffic Destination: **WAN** (dropdown)

Image 4-10-2: MultiWAN > Settings

#### Multi Wan status

Enable or disable MultiWan. To use MultiWan, the WAN (wired) must be configured as independent in the Network > WAN settings, and a DHCP or Static IP Address set.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / **Disable**

#### Primary Connection

Define which connection is the primary network/internet connection for the VIP4G. Normally this is the wired WAN connection to an ISP.

#### Values (selection)

**WAN** / 4G

#### Health Monitor Interval

This is the frequency at which the VIP4G will send ICMP packets to the defined host to determine if the interface has failed.

#### Values (selection)

5,10,20,30,60,120(sec.)  
**Disable**



## 4.0 Configuration

### Health Monitor ICMP Host

This is the IP Address or domain name of a valid reachable host that can be used to determine link health.

Values (Address)

8.8.8.8

### Health Monitor ICMP Timeout

This is the amount of time the Health Monitor will wait for a response from the ICMP Host.

Values (selection)

1, 2, **3**, 4, 5, 10 (seconds)

### Attempts Before WAN Failover

This is the number of attempts the VIP4G will attempt to reach the ICMP host before going into failover and switching WAN interfaces.

Values (selection)

1, **3**, 5, 10, 15, 20

### Attempts Before WAN Recovery

The VIP4G will continue to monitor the failed interface, even after failover has occurred. This defines the number of successful attempts required before recovering the failed interface.

Values (selection)

1, **3**, 5, 10, 15, 20

### Failover Traffic Destination

Select the interface to use once failover has occurred.

Values (selection)

4G, WAN, Disable

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.10.3 MultiWAN > Traffic

The Traffic Menu allows a user to select the WAN/4G interface used based on different traffic types, or data from specific sources and/or destinations. For example, all traffic from a specific IP address could be set to use the 4G interface, while all other traffic uses the WAN, or that all UDP traffic uses the WAN interface, and TCP data uses the 4G, etc.

**Multi WAN Traffic Rules**

**Traffic Rules Configuration**

Rule Name: rule\_01  
 Source Address: all  
 Destination Address: all  
 Protocol: All  
 Ports: 80  
 Port Type: All  
 WAN Uplink: WAN  
 Add Rule

**Firewall Rules Summary**

| Name | Source Address | Destination Address | Protocol | Ports | P Type | WAN Uplink |                             |
|------|----------------|---------------------|----------|-------|--------|------------|-----------------------------|
|      | 192.168.1.0/24 | ftp.netlab7.com     | TCP      | 21    | All    | 4G         | <a href="#">Remove Rule</a> |
|      | 192.168.0.3    |                     | ICMP     |       | All    | 4G         | <a href="#">Remove Rule</a> |
|      |                | www.whatismyip.com  | ALL      |       | All    | Default    | <a href="#">Remove Rule</a> |

Image 4-10-3: MultiWAN > Traffic

#### Rule Name

Each rule must have a unique user defined name.

Values (characters)

rule\_01

#### Source Address

This would allow a user to create a rule based on the source address, or the address or which the data is coming from.

Values (IP Address)

all, IP Address

#### Destination Address

This would allow a user to create a rule based on the destination address, or the address or which the data is going to.

Values (IP Address)

all, IP Address

## 4.0 Configuration

### Protocol

The type of traffic can be selected using the Protocol field.

#### Values (characters)

All, TCP, UDP, ICMP

### Ports

Data can also be specified and directed to a specific interface based on which port it is going to, or from.

#### Values (IP Port)

80

### Port Type

Used with the above Ports parameter to further define if the rules is to be based on incoming, outgoing or both types of data related to a specific IP Port.

#### Values (selection)

all, source, destination

### WAN Uplink

The WAN Uplink defines the interface used for the current rule.

#### Values (selection)

4G, **WAN**, Default

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11 Tools

#### 4.11.1 Tools > Discovery

##### Network Discovery

The Network discovery tool allows the VIP4G to send a broadcast to all VIP4G/VIP Series units on the same network. Other units on the network will respond to the broadcast and report their MAC address, IP address (With a hyperlink to that units WebUI page), description, firmware version, operating mode, and the SSID (regardless of whether it was set to broadcast or not).

The discovery service can be a useful troubleshooting tool and can be used to quickly find and identify other units on the network. It can be disabled from the Network > sdpServer menu.



Image 4-11-1: Tools > Discovery

To begin, click the **Start discovery network again** button, the VIP4G will send out a broadcast message, and will report back, by populating the network discovery screen as seen above. This will detect any VIP4G or Microhard enabled devices on the local broadcast domain, regardless of the IP address or subnet. Once devices are found, and if on a accessible subnet, the IP Address link can be used to automatically open a web browser WebUI session with that unit.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.2 Tools > Netflow Report

The VIP4G can be configured to send Netflow reports to up to 3 remote systems. Netflow is a tool that collects and reports IP traffic information, allowing a user to analyze network traffic on a per interface basis to identify bandwidth issues and to understand data needs. Standard Netflow Filters can be applied to narrow down results and target specific data requirements.

| System    | Network               | Carrier      | Wireless     | Comport | I/O       | GPS         | Firewall | VPN    | MultiWAN | Tools |
|-----------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|--------|----------|-------|
| Discovery | <b>Netflow Report</b> | NMS Settings | Event Report | Modbus  | Websocket | Site Survey | Ping     | TraceR |          |       |

### Netflow Report

Report Configuration No.1

Status: **Enable**

Source Address: 0.0.0.0 (default 0.0.0.0)

Interface: **ALL**

Remote IP: 0.0.0.0

Remote Port: 2055 (0 ~ 65535)

Filter expression:

Version: **V5**

Report Configuration No.2

Status: **Disable**

Report Configuration No.3

Status: **Disable**

Image 4-11-2: Tools > Netflow Report

#### Status

Enable / Disable Netflow Reporting.

Values (selection)

**Disable** / Enable

#### Source Address

The Source Address is the IP Address, of which data is to be collected and analyzed. The default of 0.0.0.0 will collect and report information about all addresses connected to the interface selected below.

Values (IP Address)

**0.0.0.0**

#### Interface

Select between WAN ,4G/Cellular and LAN interfaces, or capture data from all interfaces.

Values (selection)

**LAN** / WAN / 4G / ALL

## 4.0 Configuration

### Remote IP

The Remote IP is the IP Address of the NetFlow collector where the flow reports are be sent.

Values (IP Address)

0.0.0.0

### Remote Port

Enter the Remote Port number.

Values (IP Address)

0

### Filter expression

Filter expression selects which packets will be captured. If no expression is given, all packets will be captured. Otherwise, only packets for which expression is 'true' will be captured. Example: **tcp&&port 80**

Values (chars)

(no default)

*The "tcpdump" manual, available on the internet provides detailed expression syntax.*

### Version

Select the Netflow version format to use. V1, 5 and 7 are supported.

Values (selection)

V1 / V5 / V7



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.3 Tools > NMS Settings

The Microhard NMS is a no cost server based monitoring and management service offered by Microhard Systems Inc. Using NMS you can monitor online/offline units, retrieve usage data, perform backups and centralized upgrades, etc. The following section describes how to get started with NMS and how to configure the VIP4G to report to NMS.

To get started with NMS, browse to the Microhard NMS website, [nms.microhardcorp.com](https://nms.microhardcorp.com), click on the register button in the top right corner to register for a Domain (profile), and set up a Domain Administrator Account.

The top screenshot shows the Microhard NMS login page. It features the Microhard Systems Inc. logo and a login form with fields for 'Email Address' and 'Password'. A 'Login' button is at the bottom right of the form. A link for 'Forgot your password?' is also present. The browser address bar shows 'https://nms.microhardcorp.com/MicrohardNMS/login.seam'.

The bottom screenshot shows the registration page titled 'Register for Domain and Domain Administrator Account'. It is divided into two main sections: 'Domain' and 'Domain Administrator Account'. The 'Domain' section includes fields for 'Choose your domain name', 'Create a password for your domain', 'Confirm your domain password', 'Please enter the name of your organization', 'Please enter the address of your organization', and 'Please enter the phone number of your organization'. The 'Domain Administrator Account' section includes fields for 'Please enter your first name', 'Please enter your last name', 'Please enter your email address', 'Create a password', 'Confirm your password', 'Service email address', and 'Your cell phone number'. There is a checkbox for 'Same as primary email address' and a CAPTCHA image. A 'Register' button is at the bottom. The browser address bar shows 'https://nms.microhardcorp.com/MicrohardNMS/registration.seam'.

Image 4-11-3: NMS Registration

## 4.0 Configuration

**Domain Name:** A logical management zone for 3G or 4G devices will report to on NMS, the logged data is separated from any other users that are using NMS. The Domain Name is required in every 3G or 4G device for it to report to right zone. Under this user domain, one can create and manage sub-domain. The sub-domain can only be created by the domain administrator, NOT by the NMS subscription page.

**Domain Password:** This password is used to prevent misuse of the domain. This needs to be entered into each 3G or 4G device for it to report to right zone.

**Email Address:** The email address entered here will be the login username. During the registration stage, a confirmation email will be sent by the NMS system for verification and confirmation to activate your account.

Once confirmed, this account will be the administrator of the domain. The administrator can manage sub-domain and user accounts that belong to this domain.

Once NMS has been configured, each VIP4G must be configured to report into NMS.

| System    | Network        | Carrier      | Wireless     | Comport | I/O       | GPS         | Firewall | VPN    | MultiWAN | Tools |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|--------|----------|-------|
| Discovery | Netflow Report | NMS Settings | Event Report | Modbus  | Websocket | Site Survey | Ping     | TraceR |          |       |

### NMS Configuration

Default Settings [Edit with default configuration](#)

#### System Setting

NMS Server/IP:  [Login NMS](#)

Domain Name:

Domain Password:  Min 5 characters

Confirm Password:

#### NMS Report Setting

Carrier Location:

Report Status:

Remote PORT:  [0 ~ 65535]  
(default:20200)

Interval Time(s):  [0 ~ 65535]

Information Selection: Available Items:

Ethernet: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

Carrier: ☐ Disable ☒ Enable

Radio: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

Com: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

DI/DO: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

#### Webclient Setting

Status:

Server Type:

Server Port:

User Name:

Password:

Interval:  (minutes)

Image 4-11-4: NMS Settings

## 4.0 Configuration

### Network Management System (NMS) Configuration

#### Default Settings

The default Settings link will reset the configuration form to the default factory values. The form still needs to be submitted before any changes will occur.

#### NMS Server/IP

The default server address for NMS is nms.microhardcorp.com. The NMS can also be hosted privately, and if that is the case, enter the address here.

##### Values (IP/Name)

nms.microhardcorp.com

#### Domain Name / Password

This is the domain name and password that was registered on the NMS website, it must be entered to enable reporting to the NMS system.

##### Values (chars)

default

### NMS Report Setting

#### Carrier Location

Enable or Disable location estimation via carrier connection. When enabled, the VIP4G will consume some data to retrieve location information from the internet.

##### Values (chars)

Disable/Enable

#### Report Status

Enable or Disable UDP reporting of data to the NMS system.

##### Values (chars)

Enable NMS Report  
Disable NMS Report

#### Remote Port

This is the port to which the UDP packets are sent, and the NMS system is listening on. Ensure this matches what is configured on NMS. The default is 20200.

##### Values (UDP Port#)

20200

#### Interval(s)

The Interval defines how often data is reported to NMS. The more often data is reported, the more data is used, so this should be set according to a user's data plan. (0 to 65535 seconds)

##### Values (seconds)

300

## 4.0 Configuration

| Information Selection   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>The VIP4G can report information about the different interfaces it has. By default the VIP4G is set to send information about the Carrier, such as usage and RSSI. Statistical and usage data on the Radio (WiFi), Ethernet and Serial interfaces can also be reported.</p> <p>The more that is reported, the more data that is sent to the NMS system, be aware of data plan constraints and related costs.</p> | <p><b>Values (check boxes)</b></p> <p>Ethernet<br/> <b>Carrier</b><br/> Radio<br/> COM<br/> DI / DO</p> |
| Webclient Setting   |   |
| Status  |   |
| <p>The Web Service can be enabled or disabled. This service is used to remotely control the VIP4G. It can be used to schedule reboots, firmware upgrade and backup tasks, etc.</p>  | <p><b>Values (chars)</b></p> <p><b>Disable/Enable</b></p>   |
| Server Type   |   |
| <p>Select between HTTPS (secure), or HTTP server type.</p>  | <p><b>Values (chars)</b></p> <p><b>HTTPS/ HTTP</b></p>  |
| Server Port   |   |
| <p>This is the port where the service is installed and listening. This port should be open on any installed firewalls.</p>  | <p><b>Values (Port#)</b></p> <p><b>9998</b></p>   |
| Username / Password   |   |
| <p>This is the username and password used to authenticate the unit.</p>   | <p><b>Values (seconds)</b></p> <p><b>admin/admin</b></p>  |
| Interval  |   |
| <p>The Interval defines how often the VIP4G checks with the NMS System to determine if there are any tasks to be completed. Carrier data will be consumed every time the device probes the NMS system.</p>  | <p><b>Values (min)</b></p> <p><b>60</b></p>   |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.4 Tools > Event Report

#### 4.11.4.1 Event Report > Configuration

Event Reporting allows the VIP4G to send periodic updates via UDP packets. These packets are customizable and can be sent to up to 3 different hosts, and at a programmable interval. The event packet can report information about the modem such as the hardware/ software versions, core temperature, supply voltage, etc; carrier info such as signal strength (RSSI), phone number, RF Band; or about the WAN such as if the assigned IP Address changes. All events are reported in binary.

The screenshot displays the 'Event Report' configuration page. It features a top navigation bar with tabs: System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with tabs: Discovery, Netflow Report, NMS Settings, Event Report (selected), Modbus, Websocket, Site Survey, Ping, and TraceR. The main content area is titled 'Event Report' and contains three configuration sections:

- Report Configuration No.1:**
  - Event Type: Modem\_Event
  - Remote IP: 0.0.0.0
  - Remote PORT: 20200
  - Interval Time(s): 600
  - Message Info Type: Modem, None, None
- Report Configuration No.2:**
  - Event Type: SDP\_Event
  - Remote IP: 0.0.0.0
  - Remote PORT: 20200
  - Interval Time(s): 600
- Report Configuration No.3:**
  - Event Type: Management
  - Remote IP: 0.0.0.0
  - Remote PORT: 20200
  - Interval Time(s): 600
  - Interface Selection:
    - Ethernet: ☐ Disable ☒ Enable
    - Carrier: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable
    - Radio: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable
    - Com: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable
    - DI/DO: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

Image 4-11-5: Tools > Event Report

#### Event Type

This box allows the selection of the type of event to be reported. The default is disabled. If Modem\_Event is selected, additional options appear to the right and allow for customization of the event reported via Messages. If Management is selected, additional check boxes appear below to select the interfaces to report to the Microhard NMS system.

#### Values (selection)

Modem\_Event  
SDP\_Event  
Management

## 4.0 Configuration

| Remote IP  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| Enter the IP Address of a reachable host to send the UDP packets   | Values (IP Address)     |
|  | 0.0.0.0                 |
| Remote Port  |                         |
| Specify the UDP port number of the Remote IP Address.  | Values (Port #)         |
| *Default Port Numbers for Microhard NMS (20100 for modem events, 20200 for Management)   | 20200                   |
| Interval Time(s)   |                         |
| This is the interval time in seconds, that the VIP4G will send the configured UDP message to the Remote IP and Port specified. | Values (seconds)        |
|  | 600                     |
| Message Info Type  |                         |
| When Modem_Event is selected, up to three different payloads can be selected.  | Values (seconds)        |
|  | Modem<br>Carrier<br>WAN |

### 4.11.4.2 Event Report > Message Structure

#### Modem\_event message structure

- fixed header (fixed size 20 bytes)
- Modem ID (uint64\_t (8 bytes))
- Message type mask (uint8\_t(1 byte))
- reserved
- packet length (uint16\_t(2 bytes))

Note: packet length = length of fixed header + length of message payload.

#### Message type mask

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Modem info -   | 2 bits        |
|                | 00 no         |
|                | 01 yes (0x1)  |
| Carrier info - | 2 bits        |
|                | 00 no         |
|                | 01 yes (0x4)  |
| WAN Info -     | 2 bits        |
|                | 00 no         |
|                | 01 yes (0x10) |

#### spd\_event message structure

- spd\_cmd (1 byte(0x01))
- content length (1 byte)
- spd\_package - same as spd response inquiry package format



## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.4.3 Event Report > Message Payload

#### Modem info:

|                  |   |                     |
|------------------|---|---------------------|
| Content length   | - | 2 BYTES (UINT16_T)  |
| Modem name       | - | STRING (1-30 bytes) |
| Hardware version | - | STRING (1-30 bytes) |
| Software version | - | STRING (1-30 bytes) |
| Core temperature | - | STRING (1-30 bytes) |
| Supply voltage   | - | STRING (1-30 bytes) |

#### Carrier info:

|                 |   |                     |
|-----------------|---|---------------------|
| Content length  | - | 2 BYTES (UINT16_T)  |
| RSSI            | - | 1 BYTE (UINT8_T)    |
| RF Band         | - | 2 BYTES (UINT16_T)  |
| Service type    | - | STRING (1-30 Bytes) |
| Channel number  | - | STRING (1-30 Bytes) |
| SIM card number | - | STRING (1-30 Bytes) |
| Phone number    | - | STRING (1-30 Bytes) |

#### WAN Info:

|                |   |                    |
|----------------|---|--------------------|
| Content length | - | 2 BYTES (UINT16_T) |
| IP address     | - | 4 BYTES (UINT32_T) |
| DNS1           | - | 4 BYTES (UINT32_T) |
| DNS2           | - | 4 BYTES (UINT32_T) |

#### Message Order:

Messages will be ordered by message type number.

For example,

If message type mask = 0x15, the eurd package will be equipped by header+modem information+carrier information+wanip information.

If message type mask = 0x4, the eurd package will be equipped by header+carrier information.

If message type mask = 0x11, the eurd package will be equipped by header+modem information+wanip information.

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.5 Tools > Modbus

#### 4.11.5.1 Modbus > TCP Modbus

The VIP4G can be configured to operate as a TCP/IP or Serial (COM) Modbus slave and respond to Modbus requests and report various information as shown in the Data Map.

The screenshot shows the 'Modbus' configuration page in the VIP4G web interface. The page has a navigation bar at the top with tabs for System, Network, Carrier, Wireless, Comport, I/O, GPS, Firewall, VPN, MultiWAN, and Tools. The 'Tools' tab is selected, and the 'Modbus' sub-tab is active. The main content area is titled 'Modbus' and contains the 'Modbus Slave Device Config' section. This section is divided into three main parts: Status, TCP Mode Status, and COM Mode Status. Each part has a dropdown menu to enable or disable the service, followed by various configuration parameters like Port, Active Timeout(s), Slave ID, Coils Address Offset, Input Address Offset, Register Address Offset, Master IP Filter Set, and Accept Master IP1. The 'View Data Map' link is at the bottom of the configuration area.

| Modbus Slave Device Config: |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Status</b>               | Enable Service ▼                |
| <b>TCP Mode Status</b>      | Enable TCP Connection Service ▼ |
| Port                        | 502 [1 ~ 65535]                 |
| Active Timeout(s)           | 30 [0 ~ 65535]                  |
| Slave ID                    | 1 [1 ~ 255]                     |
| Coils Address Offset        | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Input Address Offset        | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Register Address Offset     | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Master IP Filter Set        | Enable IP Filter ▼              |
| Accept Master IP1           | 0.0.0.0 [0.0.0.0]               |
| Accept Master IP1           | 0.0.0.0 [0.0.0.0]               |
| Accept Master IP1           | 0.0.0.0 [0.0.0.0]               |
| Accept Master IP1           | 0.0.0.0 [0.0.0.0]               |
| <b>COM Mode Status</b>      | Enable COM ASCII Mode ▼         |
| Data Mode                   | RS232 ▼                         |
| Baud Rate                   | 19200 ▼                         |
| Data Format                 | 8N1 ▼                           |
| Character Timeout(s)        | 5 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Slave ID                    | 1 [1 ~ 255]                     |
| Coils Address Offset        | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Input Address Offset        | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |
| Register Address Offset     | 0 [0 ~ 65535]                   |

[View Data Map](#)

Image 4-11-6: Tools > Modbus Configuration

#### Status

Disable or enable the Modbus service on the VIP4G.

#### Values (selection)

Disable Service  
Enable Service

#### TCP Mode Status

Disable or enable the Modbus TCP Connection Service on the VIP4G.

#### Values (selection)

Disable  
Enable

## 4.0 Configuration

| Port   |  |
|--|--|
| Specify the Port in which the Modbus TCP service is to listen and respond to polls.  | Values (Port #)<br>502                 |
| Active Timeout(s)  |  |
| Define the active timeout in seconds.  | Values (seconds)<br>30                 |
| Slave ID   |  |
| Each Modbus slave device must have a unique address, or Slave ID. Enter this value here as required by the Modbus Host System.   | Values (value)<br>1                    |
| Coils Address Offset   |  |
| Enter the Coils Address offset as required by the Master.  | Values (value)<br>0                    |
| Input Address Offset   |  |
| Enter the Input Address offset as required by the Master.  | Values (value)<br>0                    |
| Register Address Offset  |  |
| Enter the Register Address offset as required by the Master.   | Values (value)<br>0                    |
| Master IP Filter Set   |  |
| It is possible to only accept connections from specific Modbus Master IP's, to use this feature enable the Master IP Filter and specify the IP Addresses in the fields provided. | Values (selection)<br>Disable / Enable |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.5.2 Modbus > COM (Serial) Modbus

The VIP4G can also participate in serial based Modbus, to configure and view the serial Modbus settings, the COM1 port must first be disabled in the **Comport > Settings** menu. Only the settings that are different from TCP Modbus will be discussed.

|                         |                         |             |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| COM Mode Status         | Enable COM ASCII Mode ▾ |             |
| Data Mode               | RS232 ▾                 |             |
| Baud Rate               | 19200 ▾                 |             |
| Data Format             | 8N1 ▾                   |             |
| Character Timeout(s)    | 5                       | [0 ~ 65535] |
| Slave ID                | 1                       | [1 ~ 255]   |
| Coils Address Offset    | 0                       | [0 ~ 65535] |
| Input Address Offset    | 0                       | [0 ~ 65535] |
| Register Address Offset | 0                       | [0 ~ 65535] |

Image 4-11-7: Tools > Modbus Serial Configuration

#### COM Mode Status

Disable to select the Serial (COM) mode for the Modbus service. In RTU mode, communication is in binary format and in ASCII mode, communication is in ASCII format.

##### Values (selection)

##### Disable

Enable COM ASCII Mode  
Enable COM RTU Mode

#### Data Mode

Determines which (rear of unit) serial interface shall be used to connect to external devices: RS232, RS485, or RS422. This option applies only to COM1. When an interface other than RS232 is selected, the DE9 port will be inactive.

##### Values (selection)

**RS232**  
RS485  
RS422

#### Baud Rate

The serial baud rate is the rate at which the modem is to communicate with the attached local serial device.

##### Values (selection (bps))

|        |       |             |      |
|--------|-------|-------------|------|
| 921600 | 57600 | 14400       | 3600 |
| 460800 | 38400 | <b>9600</b> | 2400 |
| 230400 | 28800 | 7200        | 1200 |
| 115200 | 19200 | 4800        | 600  |
|        |       |             | 300  |

#### Data Format

This setting determines the format of the data on the serial port. The default is 8 data bits, No parity, and 1 Stop bit.

##### Values (selection)

|            |     |     |
|------------|-----|-----|
| <b>8N1</b> | 8O1 | 7E1 |
| 8N2        | 7N1 | 7O1 |
| 8E1        | 7N2 | 7E2 |
|            |     | 7O2 |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.5.3 Modbus > Modbus Data Map

| Modbus Data Map                         |            |                       | Registers:                  |            |                                 |
|---|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Coil Bits (Output and Internal Status): |            |                       | 16 Bits                     | Hex Format | Definition                      |
| Bit Address                             | Hex Format | Definition            | Address                     |            |                                 |
| 0                                       | 0x0000     | OUTPUT 1              | 0                           | 0x0000     | Modem Model Type...             |
| 1                                       | 0x0001     | OUTPUT 2              | 1                           | 0x0001     | Build Version                   |
| 2                                       | 0x0002     | OUTPUT 3              | 2                           | 0x0002     | Modem ID Highest 2 Bytes        |
| 3                                       | 0x0003     | OUTPUT 4              | 3                           | 0x0003     | Modem ID Higher 2 Bytes         |
| 9                                       | 0x0009     | COM2 Status           | 4                           | 0x0004     | Modem ID Lower 2 Bytes          |
| 12                                      | 0x000c     | LAN/eth0 Status       | 5                           | 0x0005     | Modem ID Lowest 2 Bytes         |
| 13                                      | 0x000d     | WAN/eth1 Status       | 6                           | 0x0006     | RSSI(db)                        |
| 16                                      | 0x0010     | Carrier Status        | 8                           | 0x0008     | Core Temperature(C)             |
| 18                                      | 0x0012     | Wifi Status           | 9                           | 0x0009     | Carrier Received Bytes(MB)      |
| 22                                      | 0x0016     | GPS Status            | 10                          | 0x000a     | Carrier Transmitted Bytes(MB)   |
| 23                                      | 0x0017     | Location Over Network | 11                          | 0x000b     | GPS Altitude(m)                 |
| 24                                      | 0x0018     | Event UDP Report 1    | 12                          | 0x000c     | GPS Latitude High 2 Bytes       |
| 25                                      | 0x0019     | Event UDP Report 2    | 13                          | 0x000d     | Latitude Low 2 Bytes(x1000000)  |
| 26                                      | 0x001a     | Event UDP Report 3    | 14                          | 0x000e     | GPS Longitude High 2 Bytes      |
| 27                                      | 0x001b     | NMS Report            | 15                          | 0x000f     | Longitude Low 2 Bytes(x1000000) |
| 28                                      | 0x001c     | Web Client Service    | 18                          | 0x0012     | COM2 Baud Rate(/100)(bps)       |
| 29                                      | 0x001d     | Firewall Status       | 19                          | 0x0013     | COM2 Data Format...             |
| 40                                      | 0x0028     | SYSTEM Reboot         |                             |            |                                 |
| Input Bits:                             |            |                       | Modem Model Types:          |            |                                 |
| Bit Address                             | Hex Format | Definition            | Type ID                     | Definition |                                 |
| 0                                       | 0x0000     | INPUT 1               | 0                           | Unknow     |                                 |
| 1                                       | 0x0001     | INPUT 2               | 6                           | IPn3G      |                                 |
| 2                                       | 0x0002     | INPUT 3               | 7                           | VIP4G      |                                 |
| 3                                       | 0x0003     | INPUT 4               | 8                           | IPn4G      |                                 |
| Com Data Format Definition:             |            |                       | Com Data Format Definition: |            |                                 |
| Type ID                                 | Definition |                       | Type ID                     | Definition |                                 |
| 0                                       | Unknow     |                       | 0                           | Unknow     |                                 |
| 1                                       | 8N1        |                       | 1                           | 8N1        |                                 |
| 2                                       | 8N2        |                       | 2                           | 8N2        |                                 |
| 3                                       | 8E1        |                       | 3                           | 8E1        |                                 |
| 4                                       | 8O1        |                       | 4                           | 8O1        |                                 |
| 5                                       | 7N1        |                       | 5                           | 7N1        |                                 |
| 6                                       | 7N2        |                       | 6                           | 7N2        |                                 |
| 7                                       | 7E1        |                       | 7                           | 7E1        |                                 |
| 8                                       | 7O1        |                       | 8                           | 7O1        |                                 |
| 9                                       | 7E2        |                       | 9                           | 7E2        |                                 |
| 10                                      | 7O2        |                       | 10                          | 7O2        |                                 |

Image 4-11-8: Tools > Modbus Data Map

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.6 Tools > Websocket

The Websocket service is a feature of HTML5.0 or later. Web Socket is designed to be implemented in web browsers and web servers to allow XML scripts to access the HTML web service with a TCP socket connection.

It is mainly used for two purposes:

- refreshing page information without refreshing the entire page to reduce network stream.
- to integrate internet applications with xml to get required information in real time.

Currently we provide four types of information as configured:

- GPS Coordinate Information
- GPS NMEA Data
- Carrier Information
- Comport Data

The screenshot shows the 'Web Socket Service' configuration page. It includes a 'Status' section with a dropdown menu set to 'Enable Web Socket Service'. Below this are input fields for 'Web Socket Port' (7681), 'Data Fresh Interval' (10 seconds), 'Connect Password' (blank), and 'Max Keep Time' (60 minutes). There are also radio buttons for enabling or disabling 'GPS Coordinate', 'GPS NMEA Data', 'Carrier Information', and 'Comport Data'.

Image 4-11-9: Tools > Web Socket Service

#### Status

Enable or disable the web socket service in the VIP4G.

#### Values (selection)

Enable / **Disable**

#### Web Socket Port

Enter the desired web socket TCP port number. The default is 7681, and the valid range is 100 to 65535.

#### Values (TCP port)

**7681**



## 4.0 Configuration

| Data Fresh Intervals   |
|--|
| Enter in the time at which data is to be refreshed. The default is 10 seconds, the valid range is 2 to 65535 seconds.  |
| Values (seconds)   |
| 10   |
| Connect Password   |
| For added security a password can be required to connect to the web socket service. To disable, leave this field blank. The default is disabled.                         |
| Values   |
| (blank)  |
| Max Keep Time  |
| This field determines how long the web socket is open once started/enabled. The default is 60 mins, a value of zero means the service will continue to run indefinitely. |
| Values (minutes)   |
| 60   |
| GPS Coordinate   |
| If enabled the VIP4G will report GPS coordinate data to the websocket.   |
| Values (selection)   |
| Disable / Enable   |
| GPS NMEA Data  |
| If enabled the VIP4G will report GPS NMEA data to the websocket.   |
| Values (selection)   |
| Disable / Enable   |
| Carrier Information  |
| If enabled the VIP4G will report carrier information to the websocket.   |
| Values (selection)   |
| Disable / Enable   |
| Comport Data   |
| If enabled, and the COM1 port is configured for TCP Server, the comport data will be reported to the web socket.   |
| Values (selection)   |
| Disable / Enable   |

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.7 Tools > Site Survey

#### Wireless Survey

The Wireless Survey feature will scan the available wireless channels for any other 802.11 wireless networks in proximity to the VIP4G. The Survey will display the Channel number the other networks are operating on, the MAC address, Encryption Type, Frequency and general signal level and quality information. This can be useful for finding available networks, or troubleshooting connection and sensitivity problems. If there are other networks operating on the same frequency, or a channel close to the one chosen, it can then be decided to try to use another channel.

The screenshot shows the 'Site Survey' tool interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'System', 'Network', 'Carrier', 'Wireless', 'Comport', 'I/O', 'GPS', 'Firewall', 'VPN', 'MultiWAN', and 'Tools'. The 'Tools' tab is active, and within it, 'Site Survey' is selected. Below the tabs, there is a 'Wireless Survey' section with a note: 'Note: Your WLAN traffic will be interrupted during this brief period.' and a 'Start the scan again' button. The main section is titled 'Radio1 Survey Results' and contains a table of detected networks.

| Channel | SSID       | MACADDR           | Encryption   | Frequency | RSSI    | SNR   | Noise   | Signal Level |
|---------|------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------|---------|-------|---------|--------------|
| 1       | neelTest   | 00:0F:92:FA:07:98 | off          | 2.412GHz  | -81 dBm | 14 dB | -80 dBm | 46%          |
| 1       | ASUS       | 10:BF:48:91:6A:18 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.412GHz  | -71 dBm | 24 dB | -80 dBm | 80%          |
| 1       | Microquest | 00:15:6D:69:7D:88 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.412GHz  | -47 dBm | 48 dB | -95 dBm | 100%         |
| 4       | oceansales | 1C:8D:89:7E:A0:89 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.427GHz  | -79 dBm | 16 dB | -95 dBm | 53%          |
| 6       | work2901   | 00:15:6D:68:3D:0C | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.437GHz  | -51 dBm | 44 dB | -95 dBm | 100%         |
| 6       |            | 00:26:F3:EE:F5:1A | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.437GHz  | -82 dBm | 13 dB | -95 dBm | 43%          |
| 6       | AndrewW    | 74:D0:2B:89:0B:50 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.437GHz  | -68 dBm | 27 dB | -95 dBm | 90%          |
| 11      | Sparrow    | 90:72:40:20:F0:6A | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.462GHz  | -83 dBm | 12 dB | -84 dBm | 40%          |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 04:F0:21:04:8D:69 | off          | 2.462GHz  | -44 dBm | 51 dB | -84 dBm | 100%         |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 04:F0:21:02:3A:19 | off          | 2.462GHz  | -33 dBm | 62 dB | -84 dBm | 100%         |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 00:80:48:79:8E:38 | off          | 2.462GHz  | -56 dBm | 39 dB | -84 dBm | 100%         |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 00:80:48:79:8E:3F | off          | 2.462GHz  | -53 dBm | 42 dB | -84 dBm | 100%         |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 00:0F:92:FA:03:5B | off          | 2.462GHz  | -77 dBm | 18 dB | -84 dBm | 60%          |
| 11      | VIP4G      | 00:80:48:79:8E:50 | off          | 2.462GHz  | -54 dBm | 41 dB | -95 dBm | 100%         |
| 11      | bin        | 00:0F:92:FA:09:AF | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 2.462GHz  | -56 dBm | 39 dB | -84 dBm | 100%         |
| 149     | AndrewW    | 74:D0:2B:89:0B:54 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 5.745GHz  | -87 dBm | 8 dB  | -95 dBm | 30%          |
| 149     | wlan0_X    | 00:15:6D:67:6D:E2 | WPA/WPA2/PSK | 5.745GHz  | -74 dBm | 21 dB | -95 dBm | 70%          |

Image 4-11-10: Tools > Site Survey

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.8 Tools > Ping

#### Network Tools Ping

The Network Tools Ping feature provides a tool to test network connectivity from within the VIP4G unit. A user can use the Ping command by entering the IP address or host name of a destination device in the Ping Host Name field, use Count for the number of ping messages to send, and the Packet Size to modify the size of the packets sent.

| System    | Network        | Carrier      | Wireless     | Comport | I/O       | GPS         | Firewall | VPN        | MultiWAN | Tools |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|------------|----------|-------|
| Discovery | Netflow Report | NMS Settings | Event Report | Modbus  | Websocket | Site Survey | Ping     | TraceRoute |          |       |

#### Network Tools Ping

Ping Network Utilities

Ping Host Name:   
 Ping Count:   
 Ping Size:

```

Please wait for output of "ping -c 4 -s 56 google.com"... PING google.com (74.125.226.110): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 74.125.226.110: seq=0 ttl=55 time=100.440 ms
64 bytes from 74.125.226.110: seq=1 ttl=55 time=93.367 ms
64 bytes from 74.125.226.110: seq=2 ttl=55 time=154.812 ms
64 bytes from 74.125.226.110: seq=3 ttl=55 time=90.598 ms

--- google.com ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 90.598/109.804/154.812 ms
          
```

Copyright © 2012 Microhard Systems Inc. VIP4G\_WII

Image 4-11-11: Tools > Ping

## 4.0 Configuration

### 4.11.9 Tools > TraceRoute

#### Network TraceRoute

The **Trace Route** command can be used to provide connectivity data by providing information about the number of hops, routers and the path taken to reach a particular destination.

| System    | Network        | Carrier      | Wireless     | Comport | I/O       | GPS         | Firewall | VPN        | MultiWAN | Tools |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|------------|----------|-------|
| Discovery | Netflow Report | NMS Settings | Event Report | Modbus  | Websocket | Site Survey | Ping     | TraceRoute |          |       |

**Network TraceRoute**

TraceRoute Network Utilities

Tracerout Host Name

Please wait for output "tracert google.com"...

```

tracert to google.com (74.125.226.102), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets
 1 96.1.138.84 (96.1.138.84) 68.513 ms 73.068 ms 59.896 ms
 2 10.183.215.138 (10.183.215.138) 82.103 ms 81.713 ms 77.861 ms
 3 10.183.218.196 (10.183.218.196) 70.899 ms 77.880 ms 80.935 ms
 4 209.171.238.2 (209.171.238.2) 89.914 ms 86.897 ms 71.802 ms
 5 96.1.223.169 (96.1.223.169) 76.009 ms 74.711 ms 80.020 ms
 6 75.154.223.241 (75.154.223.241) 97.684 ms 85.990 ms 79.689 ms
 7 72.14.197.33 (72.14.197.33) 116.821 ms 116.007 ms 84.828 ms
 8 209.85.254.130 (209.85.254.130) 90.918 ms 209.85.254.122 (209.85.254.122) 98.991 ms 103.834 ms
 9 72.14.237.130 (72.14.237.130) 105.898 ms 209.85.254.238 (209.85.254.238) 103.865 ms 109.860 ms
10 216.239.46.161 (216.239.46.161) 83.784 ms 97.071 ms 82.160 ms
11 209.85.250.207 (209.85.250.207) 85.392 ms 93.634 ms 91.887 ms
12 yyz08s13-in-f6.1e100.net (74.125.226.102) 78.942 ms 89.958 ms 80.025 ms

```

Copyright © 2012 Microhard Systems Inc. VIP4G\_W

Image 4-11-12: Tools > TraceRoute

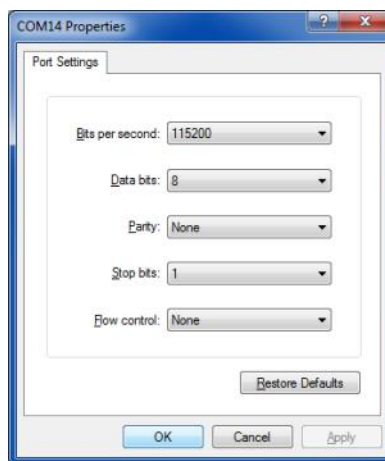
## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### 5.1 AT Command Overview

AT Commands can be issued to configure and manage the VIP4G, serial port (Serial), or by TCP/IP (telnet).

#### 5.1.1 Serial Port

To connect and access the AT Command interface on the VIP4G, a physical connection must be made on the RS232 DB9 serial port labeled 'Serial'. A terminal emulation program (Hyperterminal, Tera Term, ProComm, Putty etc) can then be used to communicate with the VIP4G.



Default Settings:

Baud rate: **115200**

Data bits: **8**

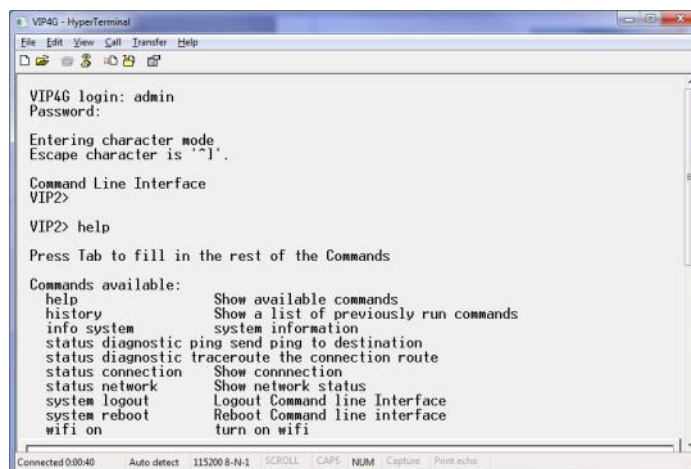
Parity: **None**

Stop Bits: **1**

Flow Control: **None**

Image 5-1: Serial Port Settings

Once communication is established, a login is required to access the AT Command interface, once logged in, the AT Command Line Interface menu is displayed. Type "?" or Help to list the menu commands.



Default Settings:

VIP4G login: **admin**

Password: **admin**

Image 5-2: AT Command Window



## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### 5.1.2 Telnet (TCP/IP)

Telnet can be used to access the AT Command interface of the VIP4G. The default port is TCP Port 23. A telnet session can be made to the unit using any Telnet application (Windows Telnet, Tera Term, ProComm etc). Once communication is established, a login is required to continue.

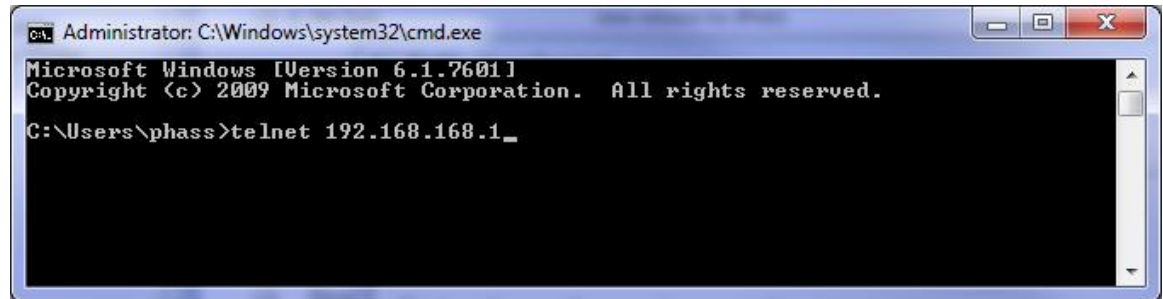


Image 5-3: Establishing a Telnet Session

A session can be made to the WAN IP Address (if allowed in the firewall settings) for remote configuration, or to the local RJ45 interface (default IP: 192.168.168.1).

Once a session is established a login is required to continue. As seen in the Serial port setup, the default login is **admin**, and the password is **admin**. Once verified, the AT Command Line Interface menu is shown and AT Commands can now be issued. (Type "?" or Help to list the commands)

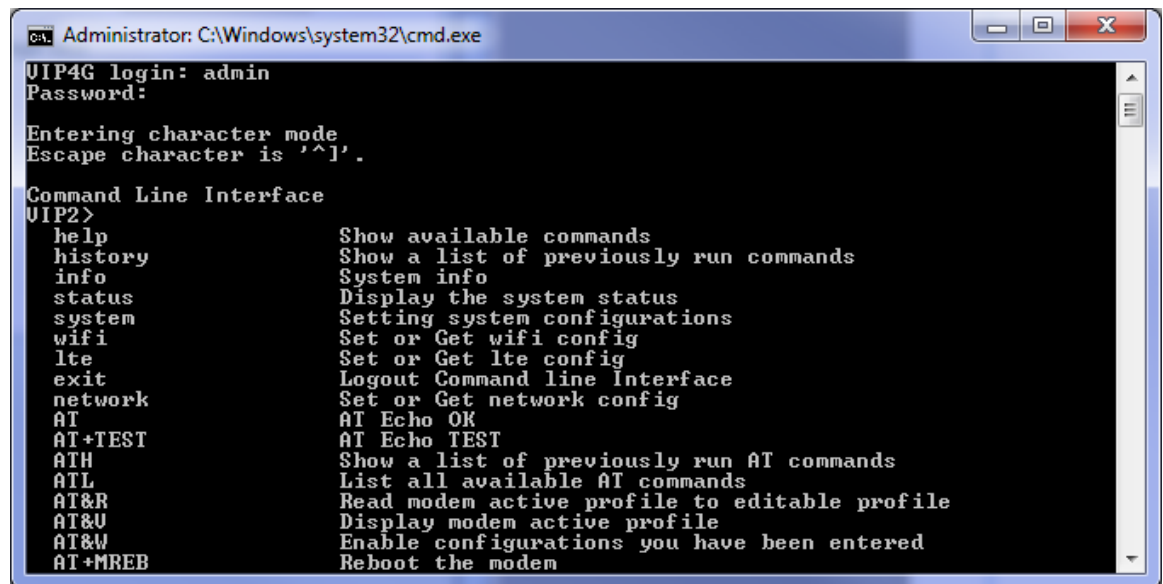


Image 5-4: Telnet AT Command Session



## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### 5.2 AT Command Syntax

The follow syntax is used when issuing AT Commands on the VIP4G

- All commands start with the AT characters and end with the <Enter> key
- Microhard Specific Commands start with +M
- Help will list top level commands (ATL will list ALL available AT Commands)
- To query syntax of a command: AT+<command\_name>=?
- Syntax for commands that are used only to query a setting:  
AT<command\_name>
- Syntax for commands that can be used to query *and* set values:  
AT<command\_name>=parameter1,parameter2,... (Sets Values)  
AT<command\_name>? (Queries the setting)

**Query Syntax:**

AT+MLEIP=? <Enter>

+MLEIP: Command Syntax:AT+MLEIP=<IP Address>,<Netmask>,<Gateway>

OK

**Setting a value:**

AT+MLEIP=192.168.0.1,255.255.255.0,192.168.0.1 <Enter>

OK

**Query a setting:**

AT+MLEIP? <Enter>

+MLEIP: "192.168.0.1", "255.255.255.0", "192.168.0.1"

OK

A screen capture of the above commands entered into a unit is shown below:

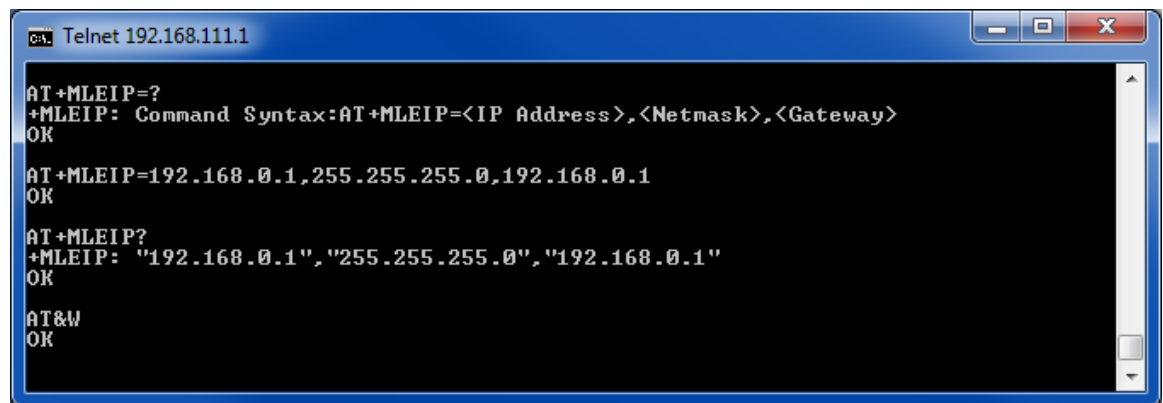


Image 5-5: Telnet AT Command Syntax

Once AT commands are entered, the changes are immediate.

ATO or ATA Exits the AT Command Line Interface.

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### 5.3 Supported AT Commands

#### AT

##### Description

Echo OK.

##### Command Syntax

AT <enter>

##### Example

**Input:**

AT <enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### AT+TEST

##### Description

Echo TEST

##### Command Syntax

AT+TEST <enter>

##### Example

**Input:**

AT+TEST <enter>

**Response:**

AT ECHO TEST:

:0

#### ATH

##### Description

Show a list of previously run commands.

##### Command Syntax

ATH <enter>

##### Example

**Input:**

ATH <enter>

**Response:**

AT Command history: 1. ATH 2. ATL 3. ATH

#### AT&R

##### Description

Read modem profile to editable profile. (Reserved)

##### Command Syntax

AT&R <enter>

##### Example

**Input:**

AT&R <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT&V

#### Description

Read modem active profile.

#### Command Syntax

AT&V <enter>

#### Example

**Input:**

AT&V <enter>

**Response:**

&V:

hostname:VIP4G

timezone:MST7MDT,M3.2.0,M11.1.0

systemmode:gateway

time mode:sync

OK

### AT&W

#### Description

Reserved.

#### Command Syntax

AT&W <enter>

#### Example

**Input:**

AT&W <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MREB

#### Description

Reboots the modem.

#### Command Syntax

AT+MREB <enter>

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MREB <enter>

**Response:**

OK. Rebooting...

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### ATA

#### Description

Quit. Exits AT Command session and returns you to login prompt.

#### Command Syntax

**ATA <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

ATA <enter>

**Response:**

OK

IPn3G Login:

### ATO

#### Description

Quit. Exits AT Command session and returns you to login prompt.

#### Command Syntax

**ATO <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

ATO <enter>

**Response:**

OK

IPn3G Login:

### AT+CMGS

#### Description

Send SMS message. To send message CTRL+Z must be entered, to exit, ESC.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CMGS=<Phone Number><CR>**  
text is entered <CTRL+Z/ESC>

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+CMGS=4035553776 <enter>

4035553776 Test <ctrl+z>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+CMGR

#### Description

This command allows the application to read stored messages. The messages are read from the SIM card memory.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CMGR=<index>**

#### Example

##### Input:

AT+CMGR=<index><enter>

##### Response:

+CMGR: <stat>,<oa>,,<dt>  
<data>  
OK

##### Parameters:

<index> Index in SIM card storage of the message  
<stat> Status of Message in Memory (Text Mode)  
"REC UNREAD" Received unread messages  
"REC READ" Received read messages  
<oa> Originator Address  
String type  
<dt> Discharge Time  
String format: "yy/MM/dd,hh:mm:ss±zz" (year [00-99]/ month [01-12]/Day [01-31],  
Hour:Min:Second and TimeZone [quarters of an hour])  
<data> SMS User Data in Text Mode  
String type

### AT+CMGL

#### Description

This command allows the application to read stored messages by indicating the type of the message to read. The messages are read from the SIM card memory.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CMGL=<status>**

Status:

0 - Lists all unread messages  
1 - Lists all read messages  
4 - Lists all messages

#### Example

##### Input:

AT+CMGL=1 <enter>

##### Response:

AT+CMGL=1  
+CMGL: 0,"REC READ","+14035553776","2013/10/04,11:12:27-06"  
Test Message 1  
+CMGL: 1,"REC READ","+14035553776","2013/10/04,11:12:53-06"  
Test Message 2  
+CMGL: 2,"REC READ","+14035553776","2013/10/04,11:13:06-06"  
Another test message!

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+CMGD

#### Description

This command handles deletion of a single message from memory location <index>, or multiple messages according to <delflag>.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CMGD=<index>,<delflag>**

delflag:

0 - Deletes the message specified in <index>

1 - Deletes all read messages

4 - Deletes all messages

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+CMGD=0,4 <enter>

**Response:**

index=0 dflag=4

OK

### AT+GMR

#### Description

Modem Record Information

#### Command Syntax

**AT+GMR <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+GMR <enter>

**Response:**

+GMR:

Hardware Version:v1.0.0 Software Version:v1.1.0 build 1060

Copyright: 2012 Microhard Systems Inc.

System Time: Mon Dec 2 16:03:51 2013

OK

### AT+GMI

#### Description

Get Manufacturer Identification

#### Command Syntax

**AT+GMI=<enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+GMI<enter>

**Response:**

+GMI: 2012 Microhard Systems Inc.

OK



## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+CNUM

#### Description

Check modem's phone number.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CNUM <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+CNUM <enter>

**Response:**

+CNUM: "+15875558645"

OK

### AT+CIMI

#### Description

Check modem's IMEI and IMSI numbers.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CIMI <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+CIMI <enter>

**Response:**

+CIMI: IMEI:012773002108403, IMSI:302720406982933

OK

### AT+CCID

#### Description

Check modem's SIM card number.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+CCID=<enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+CCID<enter>

**Response:**

+CCID: 89302720401025355531

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MSYSI

#### Description

System Summary Information

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MSYSI <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MSYSI <enter>

**Response:**

Carrier:

IMEI:012773002108403

SIMID:89302720401025355531

IMSI:302720406982933

Phone Num: +15878938645

Status: CONNECTED

Network: ROGERS

RSSI:WCDMA RSSI : 57

Temperature:61 degC

Ethernet Port:

MAC:00:0F:92:00:B5:EE

IP:192.168.168.1

MASK:255.255.255.0

Wan MAC:00:A0:C6:00:00:00

Wan IP:74.198.186.197

Wan MASK:255.255.255.252

System:

Device:VIP4G

Product:VIP4G+WIFI

Image:VIP4G

Hardware:v1.0.0

Software:v1.1.0 build 1060

Copyright: 2012 Microhard Systems Inc.

Time: Mon Dec 2 16:14:44 2013

### AT+MMNAME

#### Description

Modem Name / Radio Description. 30 chars.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MMNAME=<modem\_name>**

#### Example

**Input: (To set value)**

AT+MMNAME=VIP4G\_CLGY<enter>

**Response:**

OK

**Input: (To retrieve value)**

AT+MMNAME=?<enter>

**Response:**

+MMNAME: VIP4G\_CLGY

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MLEIP

#### Description

Set the IP Address, Netmask, and Gateway for the local Ethernet interface.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MLEIP=<IPAddress>, <Netmask>, <Gateway>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MLEIP=192.168.168.1,255.255.255.0,192.168.168.1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MDHCP

#### Description

Enable/Disable the DHCP server running of the local Ethernet interface.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MDHCP=<action>**

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MDHCP=1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MDHCPA

#### Description

Define the Starting and Ending IP Address (range) assignable by DHCP on the local Ethernet interface.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MDHCPA=<Start IP>, <End IP>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MDHCPA=192.168.168.100,192.168.168.200 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MEMAC

#### Description

Retrieve the MAC Address of the local Ethernet interface.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MEMAC <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MEMAC<enter>

**Response:**

+MEMAC: "00:0F:92:00:40:9A"

OK

### AT+MSIP

#### Description

Set LAN static IP

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MSIP=<static IP address> <enter>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MSIP=192.168.168.1 <enter>

**Response:**

+MSIP: setting and restarting network...

OK

### AT+MSCT

#### Description

Set LAN Connection Type.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MSCT=<Mode>**

**Mode:**

**0 DHCP**

**1 Static IP**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MSCT=1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MNTP

#### Description

Enable and define a NTP server.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MNTP=<status>,<NTP server>**

Status:

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MNTP=1,pool.ntp.org<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MPIPP

#### Description

Enable/Disable IP-Passthrough

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MPIPP=<Mode>**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Ethernet

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MPIPP=1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCNTO

#### Description

Sets the timeout value for the serial and telnet consoles. Once expired, user will be return to login prompt.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCNTO=<Timeout\_s>**

0 - Disabled

0 - 65535 (seconds)

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCNTO=300 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MRTF

#### Description

Reset the modem to the factory default settings stored in non-volatile (NV) memory. Unit will reboot with default settings.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MRTF <action>**

Action:

0 pre-set action

1 confirm action

OK

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MRTF=1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MTWT

#### Description

Enable/Disable the Wireless Traffic Timeout. Unit will reset if it does not see any traffic from the carrier for the amount of time defined.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MTWT=<Mode>[,<Interval\_s>,<Reboot Time Limit\_s>]**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable

Reboot Time Limit:300-60000

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MTWT=1,1,300 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MSCMD

#### Description

Enable/Disable the Wireless Traffic Timeout. Unit will reset if it does not see any traffic from the carrier for the amount of time defined.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MSCMD=<Mode>[,<Filter Mode>[,<Phone No.1>[,...,<Phone No.6>]]]**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable SMS Command

Filter Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable Phone Filter

OK

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MSCMD=1,1,403556767,4057890909<enter>

**Response:**

OK



## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MDISS

#### Description

Configure discovery mode service used by VIP4G and utilities such as "IP Discovery".

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MDISS=<Mode>**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Discoverable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MDISS=1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MPWD

#### Description

Used to set or change the ADMIN password for the VIP4G.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MPWD=<New password>,<confirm password>**

password: at least 5 characters

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MPWD=admin,admin<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MIKACE

#### Description

Enable or Disable IMCP ICMP keep-alive check.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MIKACE=<Mode>**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MIKACE=1<enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MIKAC

#### Description

Set ICMP Keep-alive check parameters.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MIKAC=<host name>, <interval in seconds>, <count>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MIKAC=www.google.com,600,10<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MDDNSE

#### Description

Enable/Disable DDNS.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MDDNSE=<Mode>**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MDDNSE=0<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MDDNS

#### Description

Select DDNS service provider, and login credentials as required for DDNS services.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MDDNS=<service type>,<host>,<user name>,<password>**

service type:

0 changeip

1 dyndns

2 eurodyndns

3 hn

4 noip

5 ods

6 ovh

7 regfish

8 tzo

9 zoneedit

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MDDNS=0,user.dyndns.org,user,password <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

AT+MEURD1  
AT+MEURD2  
AT+MEURD3

### Description

Define Event Report UDP Report No.1/2/3.

### Example

#### Input:

AT+MIKAC=www.google.com,600,10<enter>

#### Response:

OK

### Command Syntax

**AT+MEURD1=<Mode>[,<Remote IP>,<Remote Port>,<Interval Time\_s>]**

Mode:

- 0 Disable
- 1 Modem Event Report
- 2 SDP Event Report
- 3 Management Report

AT+MNMSR

### Description

Define NMS Report.

### Example

#### Input:

AT+MNMSR=1,20200,300<enter>

#### Response:

OK

### Command Syntax

**AT+MNMSR=<Mode>[,<Remote Port>,<Interval Time\_s>]**

Mode:

- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable NMS Report

AT+MGPSR1  
AT+MGPSR2  
AT+MGPSR3  
AT+MGPSR4

### Description

Define GPS Report No.1/2/3/4.

### Example

#### Input:

AT+MGPSR1=1,192.168.168.25,20175,600 <enter>

#### Response:

OK

### Command Syntax

**AT+MGPSR1=<Mode>[,<Remote IP>,<Remote Port>,<Interval Time\_s>]**

Mode:

- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable UDP Report

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTPS

#### Description

Enable/Disable the Comport serial port. This port is located on the front of the VIP4G and is labelled as the SERIAL port. It is disabled by default allowing it to be used for Console/AT Commands. If enabled it can be used for data.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTPS=<Mode>**

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTPS=0<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCTBR

#### Description

Set Comport baud rate.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTBR=<Baud Rate>**

Baud Rate:

0 300

1 600

2 1200

3 2400

4 3600

5 4800

6 7200

7 9600

8 14400

9 19200

10 28800

11 38400

12 57600

13 115200

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTBR=13<enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTDF

#### Description

Set Comport data format

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTDF=0<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTDF=<data format>**

Data Format:

0 8N1

1 8N2

2 8E1

3 8O1

4 7N1

5 7N2

6 7E1

7 7O1

8 7E2

9 7O2

### AT+MCTDM

#### Description

Set Comport data mode.

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTDM=1<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTDM=<Data Mode>**

Data Mode:

0 Seamless

1 Transparent

### AT+MCTCT

#### Description

Set Comport character timeout.

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTCT=0<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTCT=<timeout\_s>**

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTMPS

#### Description

Set Comport data format

#### Command Syntax

AT+MCTMPS=<size>

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTMPS=1024<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCTP

#### Description

Set Comport port priority.

#### Command Syntax

AT+MCTP=<Mode>

Mode:

0 Normal

1 Medium

2 High

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTP=0<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCTNCDI

#### Description

Enable/Disable Comport port no-connection data intake.

#### Command Syntax

AT+MCTNCDI=<Mode>

Mode:

0 Disable

1 Enable

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTNCDI=1<enter>

**Response:**

OK



## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTMTC

#### Description

Set Comport modbus TCP configuration.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTMTC=<Status>, <Protection status>, <Protection Key>**

Status and Protection Status:

- 0 Disable
- 1 Enable

#### Example

##### Input:

AT+MCTMTC=0,0,1234<enter>

##### Response:

OK

### AT+MCTIPM

#### Description

Set the Comport serial port IP Protocol Mode.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTIPM=<Mode>**

Mode:

- 0 TCP Client
- 1 TCP Server
- 2 TCP Client/Server
- 3 UDP Point to Point
- 4 UDP Point to Multipoint(P)
- 5 UDP Point to Multipoint(MP)
- 6 UDP Multipoint to Multipoint
- 7 SMTP Client
- 9 SMS Transparent Mode
- 11 GPS Transparent Mode

#### Example

##### Input:

AT+MCTIPM=1<enter>

##### Response:

OK

### AT+MCTTC

#### Description

Set Comport TCP Client parameters when IP Protocol Mode is set to TCP Client.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTTC=<Remote Server IP>, <Remote Server Port>, <Outgoing timeout\_s>**

#### Example

##### Input:

AT+MCTTC=0.0.0.0,20002,60<enter>

##### Response:

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTTS

#### Description

Set COM2 TCP Server parameters when IP Protocol Mode is set to TCP Server.

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTTS=0,100,20002,300<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTTS=<Polling Mode>, <Polling timeout\_s>, <Local Listener Port>, <Connection timeout\_s>**

Polling Mode:

0 Monitor

1 Multi-polling

### AT+MCTTCS

#### Description

Set COM2 TCP Client/Server parameters when IP Protocol is set to TCP Client/Server mode.

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTTCS=0.0.0.0,20002,60,0,100,20002,300<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTTCS=<Remote Server IP>, <Remote Server Port>, <Outgoing timeout\_s>, <Polling Mode>, <Polling timeout\_s>, <Local Listener Port>, <Connection timeout\_s>**

Polling Mode:

0 Monitor

1 Multi-polling

### AT+MCTUPP

#### Description

Set COM2 UDP Point-to-Point parameters when IP Protocol is set to UDP Point-to-Point mode.

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTUPP=0.0.0.0,20002,20002,10<enter>

**Response:**

OK

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTUPP=<Remote Server IP>, <Remote Server Port>, <Listener Port>, <UDP timeout\_s>**

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MCTUPMP

#### Description

Set COM2 UDP Point-to-Multipoint as point parameters when IP Protocol Mode is set to UDP Point-to-Multipoint (P)

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTUPMP=<Multicast IP>, <Multicast Port>, <Listener Port>, <Time to live>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTUPMP=224.1.1.2,20002,20012,1<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCTUPMM

#### Description

Set COM2 UDP Point-to-Multipoint as MP parameters when IP Protocol Mode is set to UDP Point-to-Multipoint (MP)

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTUPMM=<Remote IP>, <Remote Port>, <Multicast IP>, <Multicast Port>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTUPMM=0.0.0.0,20012,224.1.1.2,20002<enter>

**Response:**

OK

### AT+MCTUMPMP

#### Description

Set COM2 UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint parameters when IP Protocol is set to UDP Multipoint-to-Multipoint mode.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MCTUMPMP=<Multicast IP>, <Multicast Port>, <Time to live>, <Listen Multicast IP>, <Listen Multicast Port>**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MCTUMPMP=224.1.1.2,20012,1,224.1.1.2,20012<enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

### AT+MIS

#### Description

Module Input Status.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MIS**

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MIS <enter>

**Response:**

+MIS: available input status

INPUT 1: 0 open

OK

### AT+MOS

#### Description

Module Output Status.

#### Command Syntax

**AT+MOS=<Mode>[,<Setting No.>,<Status>]**

Mode:

0 All Output Status

1 Output Setting

Setting No.: 1, 2, 3, 4(if output available)

Status:

0 open

1 close

#### Example

**Input:**

AT+MOS=0 <enter>

**Response:**

+MOS: available output status

OUTPUT 1: 0 open

OK

**Input:**

AT+MOS=1,1,1 <enter>

**Response:**

OK

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

ATL

### Description

Lists all available AT Commands.

### Command Syntax

ATL <enter>

### Example

ATL <enter>

AT Commands available:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| AT        | AT Echo OK  |
| AT+TEST   | AT Echo TEST  |
| ATH       | Show a list of previously run AT commands                                     |
| ATL       | List all available AT commands  |
| AT&R      | Reserved  |
| AT&V      | Display modem active profile  |
| AT&W      | Reserved  |
| AT+MREB   | Reboot the modem  |
| ATA       | Quit  |
| ATO       | Quit  |
| AT+CMGS   | Send SMS  |
| AT+CMGR   | Read SMS with changing status   |
| AT+CMGL   | List SMSs with changing status  |
| AT+CMGD   | Delete SMSs   |
| AT+GMR    | Modem Record Information  |
| AT+GMI    | Get Manufacturer Identification   |
| AT+CNUM   | Check Modem's Phone Number  |
| AT+CIMI   | Check Modem's IMEI and IMSI   |
| AT+CCID   | Check Modem's SIM Card Number   |
| AT+MSYSI  | System summary information  |
| AT+MMNAME | Modem Name Setting  |
| AT+MLEIP  | Set the IP address of the modem LAN Ethernet interface                        |
| AT+MDHCP  | Enable or disable DHCP server running on the Ethernet interface               |
| AT+MDHCPA | Set the range of IP addresses to be assigned by the DHCP server               |
| AT+MEMAC  | Query the MAC address of local Ethernet interface                             |
| AT+MSIP   | Set LAN static IP   |
| AT+MSCT   | Set LAN Connection Type   |
| AT+MNTP   | Define NTP server   |
| AT+MPIPP  | Enable or disable IP-Passthrough  |
| AT+MCNTO  | Set console timeout   |
| AT+MRTF   | Reset the modem to the factory default settings from non-volatile (NV) memory |
| AT+MTWT   | Enable or disable traffic watchdog timer used to reset the modem              |
| AT+MSCMD  | Enable or disable system sms command service                                  |
| AT+MDISS  | Set discovery service used by the modem                                       |
| AT+MPWD   | Set password  |
| AT+MIKACE | Enable or disable ICMP keep-alive check                                       |
| AT+MIKAC  | Set ICMP keep-alive check   |
| AT+MDDNSE | Enable or disable DDNS  |
| AT+MDDNS  | Set DDNS  |
| AT+MEURD1 | Define Event UDP Report No.1  |
| AT+MEURD2 | Define Event UDP Report No.2  |
| AT+MEURD3 | Define Event UDP Report No.3  |
| AT+MNMSR  | Define NMS Report   |
| AT+MGPSR1 | Define GPS Report No.1  |
| AT+MGPSR2 | Define GPS Report No.2  |
| AT+MGPSR3 | Define GPS Report No.3  |
| AT+MGPSR4 | Define GPS Report No.4  |

(Continued....)

## 5.0 AT Command Line Interface

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| AT+MCTPS    | Enable or disable com port   |
| AT+MCTBR    | Set com port baud rate   |
| AT+MCTDF    | Set com port data format   |
| AT+MCTDM    | Set com port data mode   |
| AT+MCTCT    | Set com port character timeout   |
| AT+MCTMPS   | Set com port maximum packet size   |
| AT+MCTP     | Set com port priority  |
| AT+MCTNCDI  | Enable or disable com port no-connection data intake   |
| AT+MCTMTC   | Set com port modbus tcp configuration  |
| AT+MCTIPM   | Set com port IP protocol mode  |
| AT+MCTTC    | Set com port tcp client configuration when IP protocol mode be set to TCP Client                                       |
| AT+MCTTS    | Set com port tcp server configuration when IP protocol mode be set to TCP Server                                       |
| AT+MCTTCS   | Set com port tcp client/server configuration when IP protocol mode be set to TCP Client/Server                         |
| AT+MCTUPP   | Set com port UDP point to point configuration when IP protocol mode be set to UDP point to point                       |
| AT+MCTUPMP  | Set com port UDP point to multipoint as point configuration when IP protocol mode be set to UDP point to multipoint(P) |
| AT+MCTUPMM  | Set com port UDP point to multipoint as MP configuration when IP protocol mode be set to UDP point to multipoint(MP)   |
| AT+MCTUMPMP | Set com port UDP multipoint to multipoint configuration when IP protocol mode be set to UDP multipoint to multipoint   |
| AT+MIS      | Module Input status  |
| AT+MOS      | Module Output status and setting   |



## Appendix A: Serial Interface

| Module<br>(DCE) | Signal | Host (e.g. PC)<br>(DTE) | Arrows denote the direction that signals are asserted (e.g., DCD originates at the DCE, informing the DTE that a carrier is present). |
|-----------------|--------|-------------------------|---|
| 1               | DCD →  | IN                      | The interface conforms to standard RS-232 signals, so direct connection to a host PC (for example) is accommodated.                   |
| 2               | RX →   | IN                      |   |
| 3               | ← TX   | OUT                     |   |
| 4               | ← DTR  | OUT                     |   |
| 5               | SG     |                         |   |
| 6               | DSR →  | IN                      | The signals in the asynchronous serial interface are described below:   |
| 7               | ← RTS  | OUT                     |   |
| 8               | CTS →  | IN                      |   |

**DCD** *Data Carrier Detect* - Output from Module - When asserted (TTL low), DCD informs the DTE that a communications link has been established with another MHX 920A.

**RX** *Receive Data* - Output from Module - Signals transferred from the MHX 920A are received by the DTE via RX.

**TX** *Transmit Data* - Input to Module - Signals are transmitted from the DTE via TX to the MHX 920A.

**DTR** *Data Terminal Ready* - Input to Module - Asserted (TTL low) by the DTE to inform the module that it is alive and ready for communications.

**SG** *Signal Ground* - Provides a ground reference for all signals transmitted by both DTE and DCE.

**DSR** *Data Set Ready* - Output from Module - Asserted (TTL low) by the DCE to inform the DTE that it is alive and ready for communications. DSR is the module's equivalent of the DTR signal.

**RTS** *Request to Send* - Input to Module - A "handshaking" signal which is asserted by the DTE (TTL low) when it is ready. When hardware handshaking is used, the RTS signal indicates to the DCE that the host can receive data.

**CTS** *Clear to Send* - Output from Module - A "handshaking" signal which is asserted by the DCE (TTL low) when it has enabled communications and transmission from the DTE can commence. When hardware handshaking is used, the CTS signal indicates to the host that the DCE can receive data.

Notes: It is typical to refer to RX and TX from the perspective of the DTE. This should be kept in mind when looking at signals relative to the module (DCE); the module transmits data on the RX line, and receives on TX.

"DCE" and "module" are often synonymous since a module is typically a DCE device.

"DTE" is, in most applications, a device such as a host PC.

## Appendix B: IP-Passthrough Example (Page 1 of 2)

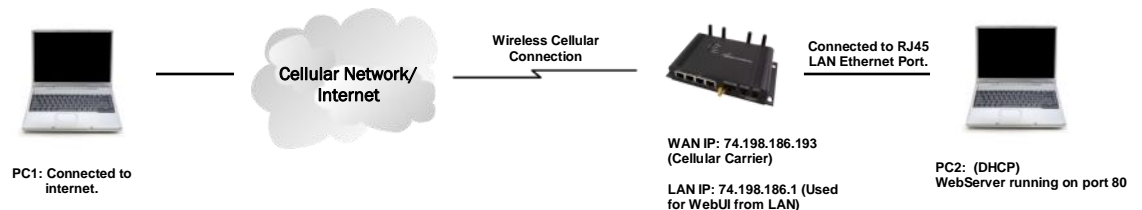
By completing the Quick Start process, a user should have been able to log in and set up the VIP4G to work with their cellular carrier. By completing this, the modem is ready to be used to access the internet and provide mobile connectivity. However, a common application of the VIP4G is to access connected devices remotely. In order to do this, the VIP4G must be told how to deal with incoming traffic, where to send it to. To accomplish this there are three options :

- IP-Passthrough
- Port Forwarding
- DMZ (a type of Port Forwarding)

In this section we will talk about IP-Passthrough and how to configure the VIP4G and the connected device/PC to work with IP-Passthrough. IP-Passthrough means that the VIP4G is transparent, and all outside (WAN) traffic is simply sent directly to a single device connected to one of the physical LAN RJ-45 ports on the VIP4G (With exception of port 80, which is retained for remote configuration (configurable)). Also, any traffic that is sent to the RJ45 port is sent directly out the WAN port and is not processed by the VIP4G.

IP-Passthrough is ideal for applications where only a single device is connected to the VIP4G, and other features of the VIP4G are not required. When in passthrough mode, most features of the VIP4G are bypassed, this includes the serial ports, the GPS features, VPN, the Firewall, and much more. The advantage of IP-Passthrough is that the configuration is very simple.

In the example below we have a VIP4G connected to a PC (PC2). The application requires that PC1 be able to access several services on PC2. Using Port Forwarding this would require a new rule created for each port, and some applications or services may require several ports so this would require several rules, and the rules may be different for each installation, making future maintenance difficult. For IP-Passthrough, PC1 only needs to know the Public Static IP Address of the VIP4G, the VIP4G would then automatically assign, via DHCP, the WAN IP to the attached PC2, creating a transparent connection.



### Step 1

Log into the VIP4G (Refer to Quick Start), and ensure that DHCP is enabled on the **Network > LAN** page.

| LAN DHCP                |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| DHCP                    | Enable          |
| Start                   | 192.168.168.100 |
| Limit                   | 150             |
| Lease Time (in minutes) | 720             |

### Step 2

Since PC2 requires port 80 to be used as its Web server port, port 80 cannot be used on the VIP4G, by default it retains this port for remote configuration. To change the port used by the VIP4G, navigate to the **System > Settings** page as seen below. For this example we are going to change it to port 8080. When changing port numbers on the VIP4G, it is recommended to reboot the unit before continuing, remember the new WebUI port is now 8080 when you log back into the VIP4G. (e.g. 192.168.168.1:8080).

| Web Configuration Settings |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| HTTP Port                  | 8080 |
| HTTP SSL                   | Off  |

## Appendix B: IP-Passthrough Example (Page 2 of 2)

### Step 3

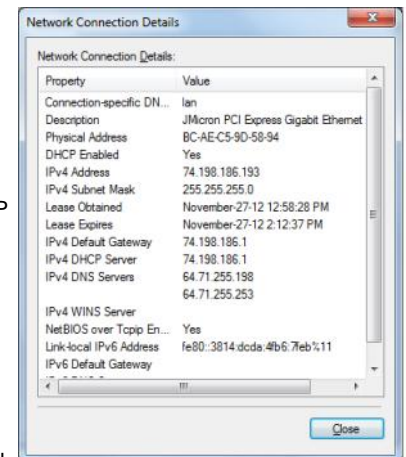
Now IP-Passthrough can be enabled on the VIP4G. Under the **Carrier > Settings** tab, IP-Passthrough can be found. To enable this feature, select "Ethernet" from the drop down box. Once the changes are applied, whichever device is physically connected to the LAN RJ45 port, will dynamically be assigned the WAN IP Address. In this example, this would be 74.198.186.193.

The default IP address of 192.168.168.1 on the LAN is no longer available, but it is still possible to access and configure the VIP4G on the LAN side, by using the X.X.X.1 IP Address, where the first 3 octets of the WAN IP are used in place of the X's. (e.g. 74.198.186.1, and remember the HTTP port in this example was changed to 8080).



### Step 4

Attach the remote device or PC to the RJ45 port of the VIP4G. The end device has to be set up for DHCP to get an IP address from the VIP4G. In the test/example setup we can verify this by looking at the current IP address. In the screenshot to the right we can see that the Laptop connected to the VIP4G has a IP Address of 74.198.186.193, which is the IP address assign by the cellular carrier for the modem.



### Step 5 (Optional)

IP-Passthrough operation can also be verified in the VIP4G. Once IP-Passthrough is enabled you can access the VIP4G WebUI by one of the following methods:

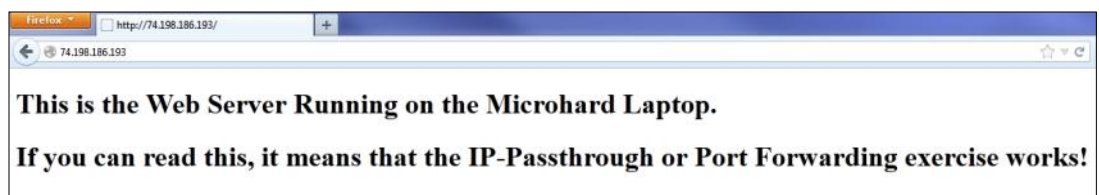
- Remotely on the WAN side (usually the internet), using the WAN IP, and the port specified for HTTP operation (or, if enabled, by using the HTTPS (443) ports), in this example with would be 74.198.186.193:8080.
- On the LAN side, by entering in the first 3 octets of the WAN IP and .1 for the fourth, so in our example 74.198.186.1:8080.

Once logged in, navigate to the **Carrier > Status** page. Under WAN IP Address it should look something like shown in the image to the right, 74.198.186.193 on LAN.

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Connection Duration | 1 min 43 sec          |
| WAN IP Address      | 74.198.186.193 on LAN |
| DNS Server 1        | 64.71.255.198         |

### Step 6

The last step is to verify the remote device can be accessed. In this example a PC is connected to the RJ45 port of the VIP4G. On this PC a simple apache web server is running to illustrate a functioning system. On a remote PC, enter the WAN IP Address of the VIP4G into a web browser. As seen below, when the IP Address of the VIP4G is entered, the data is passed through to the attached PC. The screen shot below shows that our test setup was successful.



## Appendix C: Port Forwarding Example (Page 1 of 2)

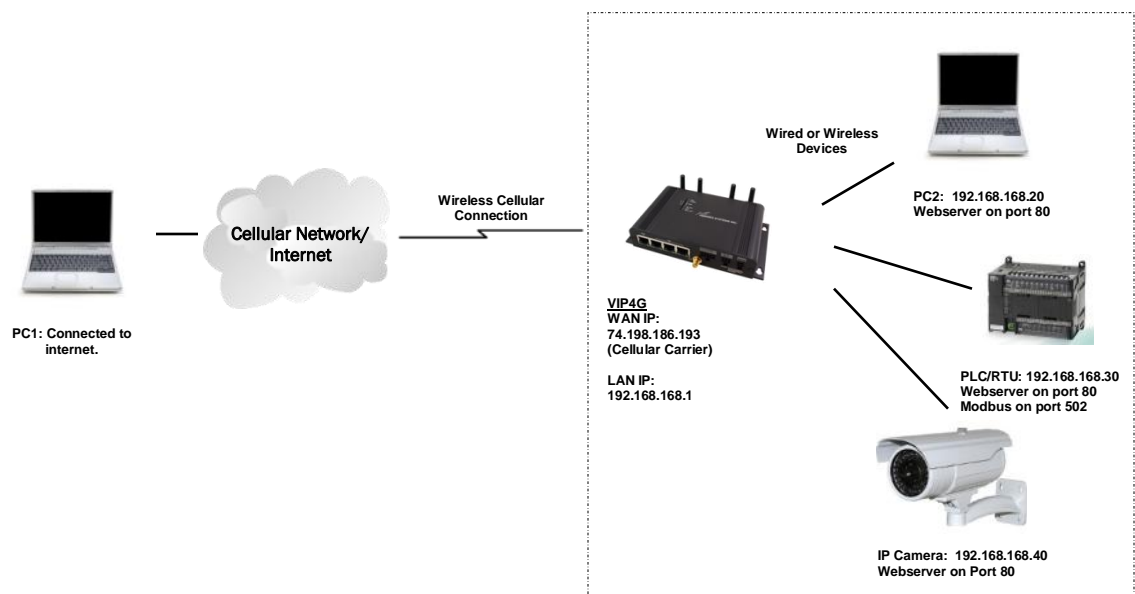
By completing the Quick Start process, a user should have been able to log in and set up the VIP4G to work with their cellular carrier. By completing this, the modem is ready to be used to access the internet and provide mobile connectivity. However, one of the main applications of the VIP4G is to access connected devices remotely. In order to do this, the VIP4G must be told how to deal with incoming traffic, where to send it to. To accomplish this there are three options :

- IP-Passthrough
- Port Forwarding
- DMZ (a type of Port Forwarding)

In the previous section we illustrated how to use and setup IP-Passthrough. In this section we will talk about port forwarding. Port forwarding is ideal when there are multiple devices connected to the VIP4G, or if other features of the VIP4G are required (Serial Ports, Firewall, GPS, etc). In port forwarding, the VIP4G looks at each incoming Ethernet packet on the WAN and by using the destination port number, determines where it will send the data on the private LAN . The VIP4G does this with each and every incoming packet.

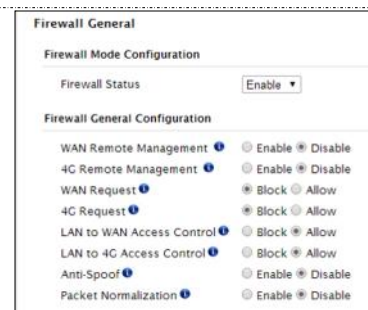
DMZ (a form of port forwarding) is useful for situations where there are multiple devices connected to the VIP4G, but all incoming traffic is destined for a single device. It is also popular to use DMZ in cases where a single device is connected but several ports are forwarded and other features of the VIP4G are required, since in passthrough mode all of these features are lost.

Consider the following example. A user has a remote location that has several devices that need to be accessed remotely. The User at PC1 can only see the VIP4G directly using the public static IP assigned by the wireless carrier, but not the devices behind it. In this case the VIP4G is acting a gateway between the Cellular Network and the Local Area Network of its connected devices. Using port forwarding we can map the way that data passes through the VIP4G.



### Step 1

Log into the VIP4G (Refer to Quick Start), and ensure that the **Firewall** is enabled. This can be found under **Firewall > General**. Also ensure that that sufficient **Rules** or **IP lists** have been setup to allow specific traffic to pass through the VIP4G. See the Firewall Example in the next Appendix for information on how to allow connections from an IP or to open ports. Once that is complete, remember to "Submit" the changes.





## Appendix C: Port Forwarding Example (Page 2 of 2)

### Step 2

Determine which external ports (WAN) are mapped to which internal IP Addresses and Ports (LAN). It is important to understand which port, accessible on the outside, is connected or mapped to which devices on the inside. For this example we are going to use the following ports, in this case it is purely arbitrary which ports are assigned, some systems may be configurable, other systems may require specific ports to be used.

| Description       | WAN IP         | External Port | Internal IP    | Internal Port |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| VIP4G WebUI       | 74.198.186.193 | 80            | 192.168.168.1  | 80            |
| PC2 Web Server    | 74.198.186.193 | 8080          | 192.168.168.20 | 80            |
| PLC Web Server    | 74.198.186.193 | 8081          | 192.168.168.30 | 80            |
| PLC Modbus        | 74.198.186.193 | 10502         | 192.168.168.30 | 502           |
| Camera Web Server | 74.198.186.193 | 8082          | 192.168.168.40 | 80            |

Notice that to the outside user, the IP Address for every device is the same, only the port number changes, but on the LAN, each external port is mapped to an internal device and port number. Also notice that the port number used for the configuration GUI for all the devices on the LAN is the same, this is fine because they are located on different IP addresses, and the different external ports mapped by the VIP4G (80, 8080, 8081, 8082), will send the data to the intended destination.

### Step 3

Create a rule for each of the lines above. A rule does not need to be created for the first line, as that was listed simply to show that the external port 80 was already used, by default, by the VIP4G itself. To create port forwarding rules, Navigate to the **Firewall > Port Forwarding** menu. When creating rules, each rule requires a unique name, this is only for reference and can be anything desired by the user. Click on the **"Add Port Forwarding"** button to add each rule to the VIP4G.

Once all rules have been added, the VIP4G configuration should look something like what is illustrated in the screen shot to the right. Be sure to **"Submit"** the Port Forwarding list to the VIP4G.

For best results, reboot the VIP4G.

| Name       | Source | Internal IP    | Internal Port | Protocol | External Port |
|------------|--------|----------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| PC2_WS     | 4G     | 192.168.168.20 | 80            | Both     | 8080          |
| PLC_WS     | 4G     | 192.168.168.30 | 80            | Both     | 8081          |
| PLC_Modbus | 4G     | 192.168.168.30 | 502           | Both     | 10502         |
| Camera     | 4G     | 192.168.168.40 | 80            | Both     | 8082          |

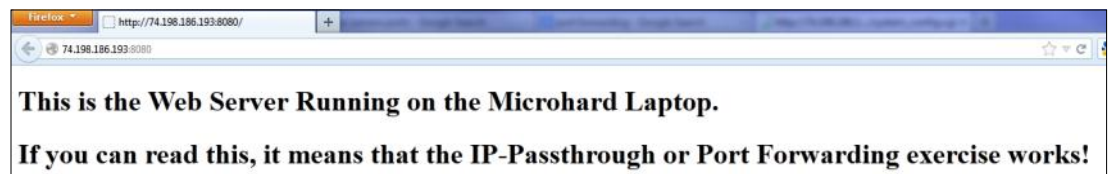
### Step 4

Configure the static addresses on all attached devices. Port forwarding required that all the attached devices have static IP addresses, this ensure that the port forwarding rules are always correct, as changing IP addresses on the attached devices would render the configured rules useless and the system will not work.

### Step 5

Test the system. The devices connected to the VIP4G should be accessible remotely. To access the devices:

For the Web Server on the PC, use a browser to connect to 74.198.186.193:8080, in this case the same webserver is running as in the IP-Passthrough example, so the result should be as follows:



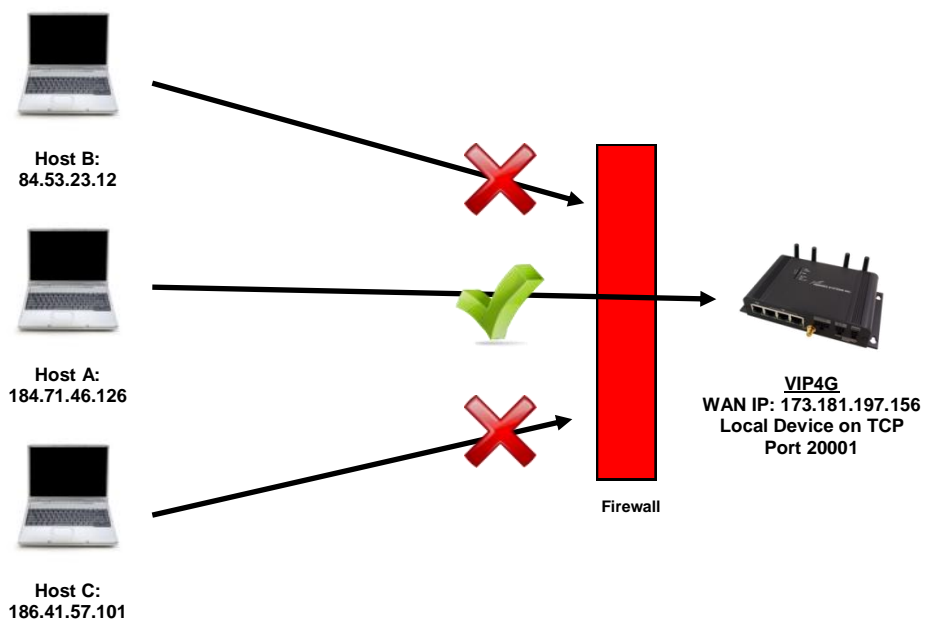
To access the other devices/services: For the PLC Web Server: 74.198.186.193:8081, for the Camera 74.198.186.193:8082, and for the Modbus on the PLC telnet to 74.198.186.193:10502 etc.

## Appendix D: Firewall Example (Page 1 of 2)

By completing the Quick Start process, a user should have been able to log in and set up the VIP4G to work with their cellular carrier. By completing this, the modem is ready to be used to access the internet and provide mobile connectivity. However, one of the main applications of the VIP4G is to access connected devices remotely. Security plays an important role in M2M deployments as in most cases the modem is publically available on the internet. Limiting access to the VIP4G is paramount for a secure deployment. The firewall features of the VIP4G allow a user to limit access to the VIP4G and the devices connected to it by the following means

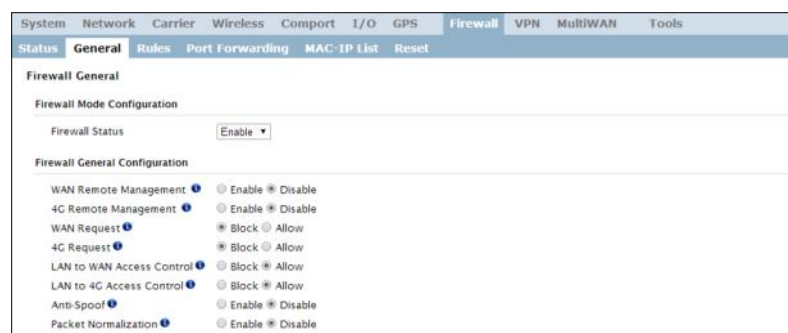
- Customizable Rules
- MAC and/or IP List
- ACL (Access Control List) or Blacklist using the above tools.

Consider the following example. An VIP4G is deployed at a remote site to collect data from an end device such as a PLC or RTU connected to the serial DATA port (Port 20001 on the WAN. It is required that only a specific host (Host A) have access to the deployed VIP4G and attached device, including the remote management features.



### Step 1

Log into the VIP4G (Refer to Quick Start). Navigate to the Firewall > General tab as shown below and ensure that the Firewall is turned on by enabling the **Firewall Status**. Next block all WAN traffic by setting the **4G Request** to Block, and disable **4G Remote Management**. Be sure to Apply the settings. At this point it should be impossible to access the VIP4G remotely through its cellular connection.





## Appendix D: Firewall Example (Page 2 of 2)

### Step 2

Under the Rules tab we need to create two new rules. A rule to enable Host A access to the Remote Management Port (TCP Port 80), and another to access the device attached the to serial port (WAN TCP Port 20001).

#### Rule 1

**Firewall Rules Configuration**

|                          |               |    |                 |
|--------------------------|---------------|----|-----------------|
| Rule Name                | Rem_Mgt       |    |                 |
| ACTION                   | Accept        |    |                 |
| Source                   | 4G            |    |                 |
| Source IPs               | 184.71.46.126 | To | 184.71.46.126   |
| Destination              | 4G            |    |                 |
| Destination IPs          | 0.0.0.0       | To | 255.255.255.255 |
| Destination Port         | 80            |    |                 |
| Protocol                 | TCP           |    |                 |
| <a href="#">Add Rule</a> |               |    |                 |

#### Rule 2

**Firewall Rules Configuration**

|                          |               |    |                 |
|--------------------------|---------------|----|-----------------|
| Rule Name                | Device        |    |                 |
| ACTION                   | Accept        |    |                 |
| Source                   | 4G            |    |                 |
| Source IPs               | 184.71.46.126 | To | 184.71.46.126   |
| Destination              | 4G            |    |                 |
| Destination IPs          | 0.0.0.0       | To | 255.255.255.255 |
| Destination Port         | 20001         |    |                 |
| Protocol                 | TCP           |    |                 |
| <a href="#">Add Rule</a> |               |    |                 |

After each rule is created be sure to click the **ADD Rule** button, once both rules are created select the **Submit** button to write the rules to the VIP4G. The Firewall Rules Summary should look like what is shown below.

| Firewall Rules Summary |        |     |               |               |      |              |                 |                  |          |                             |
|------------------------|--------|-----|---------------|---------------|------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| Name                   | Action | Src | Src IP From   | Src IP To     | Dest | Dest IP From | Dest IP To      | Destination Port | Protocol |                             |
| Rem_Mgt                | Accept | WAN | 184.71.46.126 | 184.71.46.126 | WAN  | 0.0.0.0      | 255.255.255.255 | 80               | TCP      | <a href="#">Remove Rule</a> |
| Device                 | Accept | WAN | 184.71.46.126 | 184.71.46.126 | WAN  | 0.0.0.0      | 255.255.255.255 | 20001            | TCP      | <a href="#">Remove Rule</a> |

### Step 3

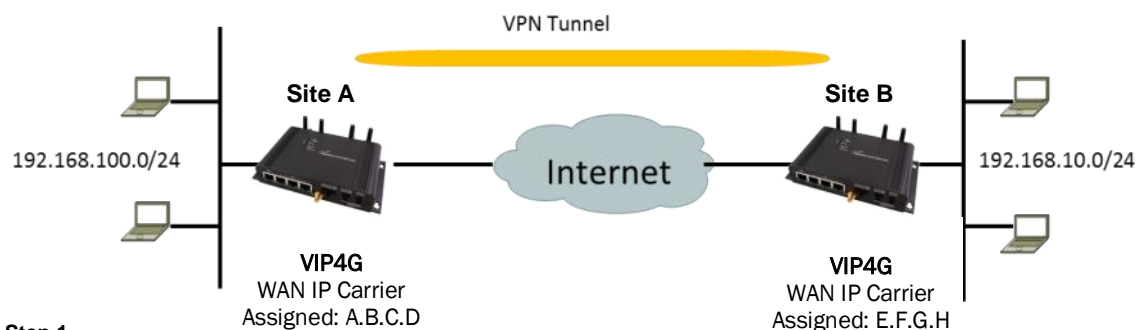
Test the connections. The VIP4G should only allow connections to the port specified from the Host A. An alternate means to limit connections to the VIP4G to a specific IP would have been to use the MAC-IP List Tool. By using Rules, we can not only limit specific IP's, but we can also specify ports that can be used by an allowed IP address.

## Appendix E: VPN Example (Page 1 of 2)

By completing the Quick Start process, a user should have been able to log in and set up the VIP4G to work with their cellular carrier. By completing this, the modem is ready to be used to access the internet and provide mobile connectivity. However, one of the main applications of the VIP4G is to access connected devices remotely. In addition to Port Forwarding and IP-Passthrough, the VIP4G has several VPN capabilities, creating a tunnel between two sites, allowing remote devices to be accessed directly.

VPN allows multiple devices to be connected to the VIP4G without the need to individually map ports to each device. Complete access to remote devices is available when using a VPN tunnel. A VPN tunnel can be created by using two VIP4G devices, each with a public IP address. At least one of the modems require a static IP address. VPN tunnels can also be created using the VIP4G to existing VPN capable devices, such as Cisco or Firebox.

### Example: VIP4G to VIP4G (Site-to-Site)



#### Step 1

Log into each of the VIP4Gs (Refer to Quick Start), and ensure that the **Firewall** is enabled. This can be found under **Firewall > General**. Also ensure that either **WAN Request** is set to **Allow**, which allows traffic to come in from the WAN, or that sufficient **Rules** or **IP lists** have been setup to allow specific traffic to pass through the VIP4G. Once that is complete, remember to "Apply" the changes.

#### Step 2

Configure the LAN IP and subnet for each VIP4G. The subnets must be different and cannot overlap.

| System | Network | Carrier | Wireless      |
|--------|---------|---------|---------------|
| Status | LAN     | Routes  | GRE SNMP sdpS |

#### Site A

**Network LAN Configuration**

LAN Configuration

Spanning Tree (STP) ☐

Connection Type

IP Address

Netmask

Default Gateway

LAN DNS Servers

DNS Server 1

DNS Server 2

LAN DHCP

DHCP Server ☐

Start

Limit

Lease Time (in minutes)

#### Site B

**Network LAN Configuration**

LAN Configuration

Spanning Tree (STP) ☐

Connection Type

IP Address

Netmask

Default Gateway

LAN DNS Servers

DNS Server 1

DNS Server 2

LAN DHCP

DHCP Server ☐

Start

Limit

Lease Time (in minutes)

## Appendix E: VPN Example (Page 2 of 2)

### Step 3

Add a VPN Gateway to Gateway tunnel on each VIP4G.

The screenshot shows the 'VPN' configuration page with tabs for Summary, Gateway To Gateway, Client To Gateway, VPN Client Access, and Certificate Management. Under the 'Gateway To Gateway' tab, there is a table with columns: No., Name, Status, Phase2 Enc/Auth/Grp, Interface, Local Group, Remote Group, Remote Gateway, RX/TX Bytes, Tunnel Test, and Config. An 'Add' button is circled in the bottom left corner of the table area.

### Site A

The screenshot shows the 'Gateway To Gateway' configuration page for Site A. The 'Add a New Tunnel' section has Tunnel Name 'Tunnel\_1', Enable checked, and Authentication 'Preshared Key'. The 'Local Group Setup' section has Local Security Gateway Type 'IP Only', Interface IP Address 'A.B.C.D', Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP '192.168.100.0', Group Subnet Mask '255.255.255.0', and Group Subnet Gateway. The 'Remote Group Setup' section has Remote Security Gateway Type 'IP Only', Gateway IP Address 'E.F.G.H', Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP '192.168.100.0', Group Subnet Mask '255.255.255.0', and Group Subnet Gateway. The 'IPSec Setup' section is circled, showing Phase 1 DH Group 'modp1024', Phase 1 Encryption '3des', Phase 1 Authentication 'md5', Phase 1 SA Life Time(s) '28800', Perfect Forward Secrecy unchecked, Phase 2 SA Type 'ESP', Phase 2 DH Group 'modp1024', Phase 2 Encryption '3des', Phase 2 Authentication 'md5', Phase 2 SA Life Time(s) '3600', Preshared Key 'password', DPD Delay(s) '32', DPD Timeout(s) '122', and DPD Action 'hold'.

### Site B

The screenshot shows the 'Gateway To Gateway' configuration page for Site B. The 'Add a New Tunnel' section has Tunnel Name 'Tunnel\_1', Enable checked, and Authentication 'Preshared Key'. The 'Local Group Setup' section has Local Security Gateway Type 'IP Only', Interface IP Address 'E.F.G.H', Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP '192.168.100.0', Group Subnet Mask '255.255.255.0', and Group Subnet Gateway. The 'Remote Group Setup' section has Remote Security Gateway Type 'IP Only', Gateway IP Address 'A.B.C.D', Next-hop Gateway IP, Group Subnet IP '192.168.100.0', Group Subnet Mask '255.255.255.0', and Group Subnet Gateway. The 'IPSec Setup' section is circled, showing Phase 1 DH Group 'modp1024', Phase 1 Encryption '3des', Phase 1 Authentication 'md5', Phase 1 SA Life Time(s) '28800', Perfect Forward Secrecy unchecked, Phase 2 SA Type 'ESP', Phase 2 DH Group 'modp1024', Phase 2 Encryption '3des', Phase 2 Authentication 'md5', Phase 2 SA Life Time(s) '3600', Preshared Key 'password', DPD Delay(s) '32', DPD Timeout(s) '122', and DPD Action 'hold'. Arrows indicate that the configuration values for Site A and Site B must match.

Must Match!

### Step 4

Submit changes to both units. It should be possible to ping and reach devices on either end of the VPN tunnel if both devices have been configured correctly and have network connectivity.

## Appendix F: Troubleshooting (FAQ)

---

Below is a number of the common support questions that are asked about the VIP4G. The purpose of the section is to provide answers and/or direction on how to solve common problems with the VIP4G.

---

**Question:** *Why can't I connect to the internet/network?*

**Answer:** To connect to the internet a SIM card issued by the Wireless Carrier must be installed and the APN programmed into the Carrier Configuration of the VIP4G. For instructions of how to log into the VIP4G refer to the Quick Start.

---

**Question:** *What is the default IP Address of the VIP4G?*

**Answer:** The default IP address for the LAN is 192.168.168.1.

---

**Question:** *What is the default login for the VIP4G?*

**Answer:** The default username is **admin**, the default password is **admin**.

---

**Question:** *What information do I need to get from my wireless carrier to set up the VIP4G?*

**Answer:** The APN is required to configure the VIP4G to communicate with a wireless carrier. Some carriers also require a username and password. The APN, username and password are only available from your wireless carrier.

Newer units may support an AUTO APN feature, which will attempt to determine the APN from a preconfigured list of carriers and commonly used APN's. This is designed to provide quick network connectivity, but will not work with private APN's. Success with AUTO APN will vary by carrier.

---

**Question:** *How do I reset my modem to factory default settings?*

**Answer:** If you are logged into the VIP4G navigate to the System > Maintenance Tab. If you cannot log in, power on the VIP4G and wait until the status LED is on solid (not flashing). Press and hold the CONFIG button until the unit reboots (about 8-10 seconds).

---

**Question:** *I can connect the Carrier, but I can't access the Internet/WAN/network from a connected PC?*

**Answer:** Ensure that you have DHCP enabled or manually set up a valid IP, Subnet, Gateway and DNS set on the local device.

---

**Question:** *I connected a device to the serial port of the VIP4G and nothing happens?*

**Answer:** In addition to the basic serial port settings, the IP Protocol Config has to be configured. Refer to the Comport Configuration pages for a description of the different options.

## Appendix F: Troubleshooting

---

---

**Question:** *How do I access the devices behind the modem remotely?*

**Answer:** To access devices behind the VIP4G remotely, several methods can be used:

A. IP Passthrough - The VIP4G is transparent and the connected device can be access directly. Refer to The IP-Passthrough Appendix for a detailed example of how this may be deployed.

B. Port Forwarding/DMZ - Individual external WAN ports are mapped to internal LAN IP's and Ports. See the Port-Forwarding Appendix for a detailed example.

C. VPN - A tunnel can be created and full access to remote devices can be obtained. Required the use of multiple modems or VPN routers. See the VPN Appendix on an example of how to set up a VPN.

---

**Question:** *I have set up firewall rules and/or port forwarding rules but they do not work?*

**Answer:** Ensure that the Firewall is **Enabled**. Even port forwarding requires that the firewall feature is enabled. If the WAN/4G request is blocked (recommended), additional rules will need to be created for any external request.

---

**Question:** *I have Internet/4G access but I cannot ping the device remotely?*

**Answer:** Ensure that the 4G/WAN request is enabled in the Firewall settings, or create a Firewall rule to allow ping messages.

---

**Question:** *I'm using IP-Passthrough but the serial ports won't work?*

**Answer:** When using IP-Passthrough, the WAN IP is assigned to the device connected to the Ethernet port, all traffic is passed through to that device. As a result serials port will not work. The only port not being passed through is the remote management port (default port 80), which can be changed in the security settings.

---

**Question:** *I'm using IP-Passthrough but the modem won't take my Firewall settings?*

**Answer:** When using IP-Passthrough, the 4G IP is assigned to the device connected to the Ethernet port, all traffic is passed through to that device. As a result the firewall settings have no effect on the unit, and is automatically disabled.

---

**Question:** *I cannot get IP-Passthrough to work?*

**Answer:** When using IP-Passthrough, the 4G IP is assigned to the device connected to the Ethernet port, all traffic is passed through to that device. In order for IP-Passthrough to work, the connected local device **must** have DHCP enabled, or the 4G IP set as a static IP in the end device.



## Appendix F: Troubleshooting

---

---

**Question:** *Why does my modem reset every 10 minutes (or other time)?*

**Answer:** There are a number of processes in the VIP4G that ensure that the unit is communicating at all times, and if a problem is detected will reboot the modem to attempt to resolve any issues:

1. Traffic Watchdog - Detects if there is any Wireless Traffic between the VIP4G and the Cellular Carrier. Will reboot modem when timer expires unless there is traffic. Carrier > Traffic Watchdog.
2. Keepalive - Attempts to contact a configured host on a defined basis. Will reboot modem if host is unreachable. Enabled by default to attempt to ping 8.8.8.8. May need to disable on private networks, or provide a reachable address to check. Access via Carrier > Keepalive.
3. Local Device Monitor - The VIP4G will monitor a local device, if that device is not present the VIP4G may reboot. Network > LocalMonitor.

---

**Question:** *How do I set up VPN?*

**Answer:** Refer to the VPN Appendix for an example.

---

**Question:** *Why is the data usage on my modem so high?*

**Answer:** Although it is impossible to answer that question without more detailed information about your modem, and the devices/application you are using, there are a number of things to keep in mind:

1. Always setup and configure a Firewall on the modem, this is especially important if the modem is using a publically accessible IP address.
2. Always change the default user/passwords.
3. Turn off any services that are not needed, such as GPS, Comports, SNMP, SSH, anything not being used specifically in your application.
4. Use the Data Usage alerts to keep informed of daily and monthly data usage of the modem to avoid surprises once the data bill arrives.





150 Country Hills Landing NW  
Calgary, Alberta  
Canada T3K 5P3

Phone: (403) 248-0028  
Fax: (403) 248-2762  
[www.microhardcorp.com](http://www.microhardcorp.com)